

Essentials of Services Marketing

4th Edition



Jochen Wirtz

Product Management: Yajnaseni Das and Ishita Sinha
Content Strategy: Steven Jackson, Daniel Luiz, and Kajori Chattopadhyay
Product Marketing: Wendy Gordon, Ashish Jain, and Ellen Harris
Supplements: Bedasree Das
Production: Vamanan Namboodiri and Sonam Arora
Rights and Permissions: Rimpay Sharma and Nilofar Jahan

Please contact <https://support.pearson.com/getsupport/s/contactsupport> with any queries on this content.

Cover Images: koya979/Shutterstock, Zoya Zhuravliova/Shutterstock, Pensiri Saekoung/123rf.com, Boyko. Pictures/Shutterstock

Pearson Education Limited

KAO Two
KAO Park
Hockham Way
Harlow
Essex
CM17 9SR
United Kingdom

and Associated Companies throughout the world

Visit us on the World Wide Web at: www.pearsonglobaleditions.com

© Pearson Education Limited 2023

The rights of Jochen Wirtz to be identified as the author of this work has been asserted by him in accordance with the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988.

Acknowledgments of third-party content appear on the appropriate page within the text, which constitutes an extension of this copyright page with the exception of the images that make up the design elements that appear throughout the text, which are credited to Maksym Dykha/Shutterstock; I'm friday/Shutterstock; Liskus/Shutterstock; kanate/Shutterstock; and Olena Vasyilkova/Fotolia.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without either the prior written permission of the publisher or a license permitting restricted copying in the United Kingdom issued by the Copyright Licensing Agency Ltd, Saffron House, 6–10 Kirby Street, London EC1N 8TS.

PEARSON and ALWAYS LEARNING are exclusive trademarks owned by Pearson Education, Inc. or its affiliates in the U.S. and/or other countries.

All trademarks used herein are the property of their respective owners. The use of any trademark in this text does not vest in the author or publisher any trademark ownership rights in such trademarks, nor does the use of such trademarks imply any affiliation with or endorsement of this book by such owners. For information regarding permissions, request forms, and the appropriate contacts within the Pearson Education Global Rights and Permissions department, please visit www.pearsoned.com/permissions/.

ISBN 10: 1-292-42519-9

ISBN 13: 978-1-292-42519-1

British Library Cataloguing-in-Publication Data

A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

1 21

Typeset in AGaramondPro-Regular by Integra Software Services Pvt. Ltd.

Printed and bound by

With gratitude and in loving memory of Christopher Lovelock,
One of the guiding lights of services marketing.

Co-author, mentor, and friend.
And above all, an inspiration.

JW

About the Author

Jochen Wirtz is Vice Dean, MBA Programmes, and Professor of Marketing at the National University of Singapore (NUS). He is also an international fellow of the Service Research Center at Karlstad University, Sweden; an Academic Scholar at the Cornell Institute for Healthy Futures (CIHF) at Cornell University, USA; and a Global Faculty of the Center for Services Leadership (CSL) at Arizona State University, USA.


Previously, Professor Wirtz was the founding director of the dual degree UCLA–NUS Executive MBA Program from 2002 to 2014, an Associate Fellow at the Saïd Business School, University of Oxford, from 2008 to 2013, and a founding member of the NUS Teaching Academy (the NUS think-tank on education matters) from 2009 to 2015.

Dr. Wirtz holds a PhD in services marketing from the London Business School and has worked in the field of services for over 25 years. His research focuses on service marketing and has been published in over 300 academic articles, book chapters, and industry reports. He is an author of over 20 books, including *Services Marketing—People, Technology, Strategy* (World Scientific, 9th edition, 2022), and like *Essentials of Services Marketing*, it has become one of the world's leading services-marketing textbooks, translated and adapted for over 26 countries and regions, with combined sales of some 1 million copies. He is also the author of *Intelligent Automation: Learn How to Harness Artificial Intelligence to Boost Business & Make Our World More Human* (2021) and *Winning in Service Markets* (World Scientific, 2017).

In recognition of his excellence in teaching and research, Professor Wirtz has received over 50 awards, including the prestigious Christopher Lovelock Career Contributions to the Services Discipline Award in 2019 (the highest recognition of the American Marketing Association [AMA] service community), the Academy of Marketing Science (AMS) 2012 Outstanding Marketing Teacher Award (the highest recognition of teaching excellence of AMS globally), and the top university-level Outstanding Educator Award at NUS. He was also the winner of the inaugural Outstanding Service Researcher Award 2010 and the Best Practical Implications Award 2009, both by Emerald Group Publications. He serves on the editorial review boards of over 10 academic journals, including the *Journal of Service Management*, *Journal of Service Research*, and *Cornell Hospitality Quarterly*, and is an ad hoc reviewer for the *Journal of the Academy of Marketing Science* and *Journal of Marketing*. Professor Wirtz hosted the American Marketing Association's Frontiers in Services Conference in 2019 and the SERVSIG Conference in 2005.


Professor Wirtz was a banker and took the banking exam at the Chamber of Commerce and Industry in Munich. He has since been an active management consultant, working with international consulting firms, including Accenture,





Arthur D. Little, and KPMG as well as major service firms in the areas of strategy, business development, and customer feedback systems. He has been involved in a number of start-ups, including Dataswift (www.dataswift.io) and TranscribeMe (TranscribeMe.com).

Originally from Germany, Professor Wirtz spent seven years in London before moving to Asia. Today, he shuttles between Asia, the United States, and Europe. For further information, see www.JochenWirtz.com.



Brief Contents

Dedication	iii
About the Author	v
Preface	xix
Acknowledgments	xxviii
Part I: Understanding Service Markets, Products, and Customers	3
Chapter 1 Introduction to Services Marketing	4
Chapter 2 Understanding Service Consumers	34
Chapter 3 Positioning Services in Competitive Markets	62
Part II: Applying the 4 Ps of Marketing to Services	93
Chapter 4 Developing Service Products and Brands	94
Chapter 5 Distributing Services through Physical and Electronic Channels	122
Chapter 6 Setting Prices and Implementing Revenue Management	154
Chapter 7 Promoting Services and Educating Customers	190
Part III: Managing the Customer Interface	235
Chapter 8 Designing Service Processes	236
Chapter 9 Balancing Demand and Capacity	272
Chapter 10 Crafting the Service Environment	300
Chapter 11 Managing People for Service Advantage	328
Part IV: Developing Customer Relationships	369
Chapter 12 Managing Relationships and Building Loyalty	370
Chapter 13 Complaint Handling and Service Recovery	406
Part V: Striving for Service Excellence	435
Chapter 14 Improving Service Quality and Productivity	436
Chapter 15 Building a World-class Service Organization	478
Part VI: Cases	504
Name Index	633
Subject Index	641

Contents

Preface	xix
Acknowledgments	xxviii
Part I: Understanding Service Markets, Products, and Customers	3
1. Introduction to Services Marketing	4
<i>Why Study Services</i>	7
Services Dominate the Global Economy	7
Most New Jobs Are Generated by Services	8
Understanding Services Offers Personal Competitive Advantage	8
<i>What Are the Principal Industries of the Service Sector?</i>	9
Contribution to Gross Domestic Product	9
<i>Powerful Forces Are Transforming Service Markets</i>	10
<i>B2B Services as a Core Engine of Economic Development</i>	10
<i>What Are Services?</i>	12
Benefits without Ownership	12
Defining Services	14
Service Products versus Customer Service and After-Sales Service	14
<i>Four Broad Categories of Services—A Process Perspective</i>	15
People Processing	16
Possession Processing	16
Mental Stimulus Processing	16
Information Processing	17
<i>Services Pose Distinct Marketing Challenges</i>	18
<i>The 7 Ps of Services Marketing</i>	18
The Traditional Marketing Mix Applied to Services	19
The Extended Services Marketing Mix for Managing the Customer Interface	21
<i>Marketing Must Be Integrated with Other Management Functions</i>	23
<i>The Service–Profit Chain</i>	24
<i>A Framework for Developing Effective Service Marketing Strategies</i>	26
2. Understanding Service Consumers	34
<i>The Three-Stage Model of Service Consumption</i>	37
<i>Pre-Purchase Stage</i>	37
Need Awareness	37
Information Search	38
Evaluation of Alternative Services	38
Purchase Decision	45

	Service Encounter Stage	46
	Service Encounters Are “Moments of Truth”	46
	The Servuction System	47
	Theater as Metaphor for Service Delivery	49
	Role and Script Theories	49
	Perceived Control Theory	50
	Post-Encounter Stage	51
	Customer Satisfaction	51
	Service Quality	52
	Customer Loyalty	55
3.	Positioning Services in Competitive Markets	62
	Customer-Driven Services Marketing Strategy	65
	Customer, Competitor, and Company Analysis (3 Cs)	65
	Segmentation, Targeting, and Positioning (STP)	66
	Segmenting Service Markets	67
	Important versus Determinant Service Attributes	69
	Segmenting Based on Service Levels	69
	Targeting Service Markets	70
	Achieving Competitive Advantage through Focus	70
	Principles of Positioning Services	74
	Using Positioning Maps to Plot Competitive Strategy	75
	An Example of Applying Positioning Maps to the Hotel Industry	75
	Mapping Future Scenarios to Identify Potential Competitive Responses	79
	Positioning Charts Help Executives Visualize Strategy	81
	Positioning Digital Services and Platforms	81
	Attributes of Digital Service Available for Positioning	81
	Developing an Effective Positioning Strategy	83
Part II:	Applying the 4 Ps of Marketing to Services	93
4.	Developing Service Products and Brands	94
	Understanding Service Products	96
	What Is a Service Product?	97
	What Are the Benefits of Well-Developed Service Products?	97
	Creating Service Products	98
	The Flower of Service	98
	Facilitating Supplementary Services	99
	Billing	101
	Payment	102
	Enhancing Supplementary Services	102
	Hospitality	102
	Exceptions	104
	Managing the Flower of Service	105

	Branding Services	105
	Service Brand Architecture at the Corporate Level	106
	Branding Service Products and Experiences	107
	Branding Service Levels (Service Tiering)	109
	Building Brand Equity	110
	Delivering Branded Service Experiences	110
	New Service Development	111
	A Hierarchy of New Service Categories	112
	Design Thinking in New Service Development	113
	Achieving Success in New Service Development	114
5.	Distributing Services through Physical and Electronic Channels	122
	Distribution in a Services Context	125
	What Is Being Distributed?	125
	How Should a Service Be Distributed?	126
	Customers Visit the Service Site	126
	Service Providers Go to Their Customers	126
	The Service Transaction Is Conducted Remotely	127
	Channel Preferences Vary among Customers	130
	Channel Integration Is Key	131
	Where Should a Service Facility Be Located?	132
	Strategic Location Considerations	132
	Tactical Location Considerations	132
	Innovative Location Strategies	134
	When Should Service Be Delivered?	135
	The Role of Intermediaries	137
	Benefits and Costs of Alternative Distribution Channels	137
	Franchising	139
	Other Intermediaries	141
	The Challenge of Distribution in Large Domestic Markets	141
	Distributing Services Internationally	142
	Factors Favoring Adoption of Transnational Strategies	143
	Barriers to International Trade in Services	145
	How to Enter International Markets	146
6.	Setting Prices and Implementing Revenue Management	154
	Effective Pricing Is Central to Financial Success	157
	Objectives for Establishing Prices	157
	Pricing Strategy Stands on Three Foundations	157
	Cost-Based Pricing	157
	Value-Based Pricing	159
	Reducing Related Monetary and Non-Monetary Costs	160
	Competition-Based Pricing	163
	Revenue Management: What It Is and How It Works	165
	Reserving Capacity for High-Yield Customers	165

	How Can We Measure the Effectiveness of a Firm's Revenue Management?	167
	How Does Competitors' Pricing Affect Revenue Management?	168
	Price Elasticity	169
	Designing Rate Fences	170
	Fairness and Ethical Concerns in Service Pricing	172
	Service Pricing Is Complex	172
	Piling on the Fees	173
	Designing Fairness into Revenue Management	175
	Putting Service Pricing into Practice	177
	How Much Should Be Charged?	179
	What Should Be the Specified Basis for Pricing?	179
	Who Should Collect Payment and Where Should Payment Be Made?	180
	When Should Payment Be Made?	181
	How Should Payment Be Made?	182
	How Should Prices Be Communicated to Target Markets?	182
7.	Promoting Services and Educating Customers	190
	Integrated Service Marketing Communications	193
	Defining the Target Audience	194
	Specifying Service Communication Objectives	194
	Strategic Service Communications Objectives	194
	Tactical Service Communications Objectives	196
	Crafting Effective Service Communication Messages	199
	Problems of Intangibility	199
	Overcoming the Problems of Intangibility	199
	The Services Marketing Communications Mix	201
	Service Communications Media and Their Effectiveness	202
	Communications Originate from Different Sources	203
	Messages Transmitted through Traditional Marketing Channels	203
	Messages Transmitted Online	207
	Messages Transmitted through Service Delivery Channels	214
	Messages Originating from Outside the Organization	215
	Timing Decisions of Services Marketing Communications	220
	Budget Decisions and Program Evaluation	220
	Ethical and Consumer Privacy Issues in Communications	221
	The Role of Corporate Design	222
	Integrated Marketing Communications	224
Part III:	Managing the Customer Interface	235
8.	Designing Service Processes	236
	What Is a Service Process?	238
	Designing and Documenting Service Processes	238
	Developing a Service Blueprint	238
	Blueprinting the Restaurant Experience: A Three-Act Performance	241

Identifying Fail Points	248
Fail-Proofing to Design Fail Points Out of Service Processes	249
Setting Service Standards and Targets	249
Consumer Perceptions and Emotions in Service Process Design	251
Service Process Redesign	252
Service Process Redesign Should Improve Both Quality and Productivity	252
Customer Participation in Service Processes	253
Customers as Service Co-Creators	254
Reducing Service Failures Caused by Customers	255
Self-Service Technologies, Service Robots, and AI	256
Customer Benefits and Adoption of Self-Service Technology	256
Customer Disadvantages and Barriers of Adoption of Self-Service Technology	257
Assessing and Improving SSTs	258
Managing Customers' Reluctance to Change	258
Service Robots in the Frontline	259
Beginning of the Service Revolution	259
Service Robots versus Traditional SSTs	260
What Services Will Robots Deliver?	261
9. Balancing Demand and Capacity	272
Fluctuations in Demand Threaten Profitability	274
From Excess Demand to Excess Capacity	274
Building Blocks of Managing Capacity and Demand	276
Defining Productive Service Capacity	276
Managing Capacity	278
Stretching Capacity Levels	278
Adjusting Capacity to Match Demand	278
Understand Patterns of Demand	279
Managing Demand	281
Marketing Mix Elements Can Be Used to Shape Demand Patterns	283
Inventory Demand through Waiting Lines and Queuing Systems	285
Waiting Is a Universal Phenomenon	285
Managing Waiting Lines	285
Different Queue Configurations	287
Virtual Waits	288
Queuing Systems Can Be Tailored to Market Segments	290
Customer Perceptions of Waiting Time	290
The Psychology of Waiting Time	290
Inventory Demand through Reservation Systems	292
Reservation Strategies Should Focus on Yield	292
Create Alternative Uses for Otherwise Wasted Capacity	293
10. Crafting the Service Environment	300
Service Environments: An Important Element of the Services Marketing Mix	302
What Is The Purpose of Service Environments?	302

	Shape Customers' Service Experiences and Behaviors	302
	Signal Quality and Position, Differentiate, and Strengthen the Brand	302
	Core Component of the Value Proposition	304
	Facilitate the Service Encounter and Enhance Productivity	305
	The Theory behind Consumer Responses to Service Environments	306
	Feelings Are a Key Driver of Customer Responses to Service Environments	307
	The Servicescape Model: An Integrative Framework	309
	Dimensions of the Service Environment	310
	The Effect of Ambient Conditions	311
	Spatial Layout and Functionality	315
	Signs, Symbols, and Artifacts	316
	People Are Part of the Service Environment Too	317
	Putting It All Together	319
	Design with a Holistic View	319
	Design from a Customer's Perspective	319
	Tools to Guide Servicescape Design	321
11.	Managing People for Service Advantage	328
	Service Employees Are Extremely Important	330
	Service Personnel as a Source of Customer Loyalty and Competitive Advantage	330
	Front-Line Work Is Difficult and Stressful	332
	Service Jobs Are Boundary-Spanning Positions	332
	Sources of Role Conflict and Role Stress	332
	Emotional Labor	333
	Service Sweatshops	334
	Cycles of Failure, Mediocrity, and Success	334
	The Cycle of Failure	335
	The Cycle of Mediocrity	336
	The Cycle of Success	337
	Human Resource Management—How to Get It Right	338
	Hire the Right People	338
	Tools to Identify the Best Candidates	340
	Train Service Employees Actively	343
	Internal Communications to Shape the Service Culture and Behaviors	348
	Empower the Front Line	349
	Build High-Performance Service-Delivery Teams	352
	Integrate Teams across Departments and Functional Areas	353
	Motivate and Energize People	355
	Service Culture, Climate, and Leadership	356
	Building a Service-Oriented Culture	356
	A Climate for Service	357
	Qualities of Effective Leaders in Service Organizations	357
	Focusing the Entire Organization on the Front Line	358

Part IV:	Developing Customer Relationships	369
12.	Managing Relationships and Building Loyalty	370
	The Search for Customer Loyalty	372
	Why Is Customer Loyalty So Important to a Firm's Profitability?	372
	Assessing the Value of a Loyal Customer	375
	Worksheet for Calculating Customer Lifetime Value	375
	The Gap between Actual and Potential Customer Value	376
	Why Are Customers Loyal?	377
	The Wheel of Loyalty	377
	Building a Foundation for Loyalty	378
	Target the Right Customers	378
	Search for Value, Not Just Volume	379
	Manage the Customer Base through Effective Tiering of Services	381
	Customer Satisfaction and Service Quality Are Prerequisites for Loyalty	383
	Strategies for Developing Loyalty Bonds with Customers	384
	Deepen the Relationship	384
	Encourage Loyalty through Financial and Non-Financial Rewards	385
	Build Higher-Level Bonds	387
	Strategies for Reducing Customer Switching	389
	Analyze Customer Switching and Monitor Declining Accounts	389
	Address Key Churn Drivers	390
	Implement Effective Complaint Handling and Service Recovery Procedures	390
	Increase Switching Costs	390
	Enablers of Customer Loyalty Strategies	391
	Customer Loyalty in a Transactional Marketing Context	391
	Relationship Marketing	391
	Creating "Membership-Type" Relationships as Enablers for Loyalty Strategies	392
	Customer Relationship Management	393
	Common Objectives of CRM Systems	393
	What Does a Comprehensive CRM Strategy Include?	394
	Common Failures in CRM Implementation	396
	How to Get CRM Implementation Right	397
13.	Complaint Handling and Service Recovery	406
	Customer Complaining Behavior	408
	Customer Response Options to Service Failure	408
	Understanding Customer Complaining Behavior	408
	What Do Customers Expect Once They Have Made a Complaint?	411
	Customer Responses to Effective Service Recovery	412
	Impact of Effective Service Recovery on Customer Loyalty	413
	The Service Recovery Paradox	413
	Principles of Effective Service Recovery Systems	414
	Make It Easy for Customers to Give Feedback	414
	Enable Effective Service Recovery	415

How Generous Should Compensation Be?	417
Dealing with Complaining Customers	417
Service Guarantees	419
The Power of Service Guarantees	419
How to Design Service Guarantees	420
Is Full Satisfaction the Best You Can Guarantee?	421
Is It Always Beneficial to Introduce a Service Guarantee?	421
Discouraging Abuse and Opportunistic Customer Behavior	422
Seven Types of Jaycustomers	422
Dealing with Customer Fraud	425

Part V: Striving for Service Excellence 435

14. Improving Service Quality and Productivity 436

Integrating Service Quality and Productivity Strategies	438
Service Quality, Productivity, and Profitability	438
What Is Service Quality?	440
Identifying and Correcting Service Quality Problems	440
The Gaps Model in Service Design and Delivery	441
How to Close Service Quality Gaps	442
Measuring Service Quality	444
Soft and Hard Service Quality Measures	444
Learning From Customer Feedback	444
Key Objectives of Effective Customer Feedback Systems	445
Use a Mix of Customer Feedback Collection Tools	445
Analysis, Reporting, and Dissemination of Customer Feedback	451
Hard Measures of Service Quality	453
Tools to Analyze and Address Service Quality Problems	455
Root Cause Analysis: The Fishbone Diagram	455
Pareto Analysis	456
Blueprinting—A Powerful Tool for Identifying Fail Points	458
Return on Quality	458
Assess Costs and Benefits of Quality Initiatives	459
Determine the Optimal Level of Reliability	460
Defining and Measuring Productivity	460
Defining Productivity in a Service Context	461
Measuring Productivity	461
Service Productivity, Efficiency, and Effectiveness	462
Improving Service Productivity	463
Generic Productivity Improvement Strategies	463
Customer-Driven Approaches to Improve Productivity	465
How Productivity Improvements Impact Quality and Value	466

Integration and Systematic Approaches to Improving Service Quality and Productivity	468
Systematic Approaches to Improving Service Quality and Productivity	469
Which Approach Should a Firm Adopt?	470
15. Building a World-Class Service Organization	478
Customer Satisfaction and Corporate Performance	480
Customer Satisfaction and the Wallet Allocation Rule	481
Creating a World-Class Service Organization	483
From Losers to Leaders: Four Levels of Service Performance	483
Moving to a Higher Level of Performance	488
Cost-Effective Service Excellence	488
Dual-Culture Strategy	488
Operations Management Approach	494
Focused Service Factory Strategy	496
Business Models Based on CESE Pathways	497
Conclusion and Wrap-Up	498

Part VI: Cases **504**

Case 1	Sullivan Ford Auto World	506
Case 2	Susan Munro, Service Customer	511
Case 3	Dr. Beckett's Dental Office	513
Case 4	Uber's Unintended Burdens	517
Case 5	Kiwi Experience	522
Case 6	The Accra Beach Hotel: Block Booking of Capacity during a Peak Period	530
Case 7	Revenue Management at The View	534
Case 8	Aussie Pooch Mobile	539
Case 9	Service Robots in the Frontline: How Will Aarion Bank's Customers Respond?	549
Case 10	Digital Luxury Services: Tradition versus Innovation in Luxury Fashion	553
Case 11	National Library Board, Singapore: Delivering Cost-Effective Service Excellence through Innovation and People	556
Case 12	Red Lobster	565
Case 13	Banyan Tree: Branding the Intangible	567
Case 14	Singapore Airlines: Managing Human Resources for Cost-Effective Service Excellence	575
Case 15	Menton Bank	583
Case 16	Dr. Mahalee Goes to London: Global Client Management	591
Case 17	Platform versus Pipeline Business Models: Are Airbnb and Marriott Right to Move into Each Other's Turf?	593

Case 18	The Royal Dining Membership Program Dilemma	596
Case 19	The Broadstripe Service Guarantee	602
Case 20	What Drives Share of Streaming for Streaming Video Services? The Launch of HBO Max	606
Case 21	LUX*: Staging a Service Revolution in a Resort Chain	617

The following cases are available for free download and class distribution on the Instructor's Resource Website for courses that adopt *Essentials of Services Marketing*, 4th edition.

Case 22	Bouleau & Huntley: Cross-Selling Professional Services
Case 23	Uber: Competing as Market Leader in the United States versus Being a Distant Second in China
Case 24	Jollibee Foods Corporation
Case 25	Hotel Imperial
Case 26	Giordano: Positioning for International Expansion
Case 27	Revenue Management of Gondolas: Maintaining the Balance between Tradition and Revenue
Case 28	Bossard Asia Pacific Can It Make Its CRM Strategy Work?
Case 29	Customer Asset Management at DHL in Asia

Name, Brand, and Organization Index 633

Subject Index 641

Preface

Services dominate the expanding world economy as never before, and technology continues to evolve in dramatic ways. Established industries and old, illustrious companies are declining and may even disappear as new business models and industries emerge. Competitive activity is fierce. This book has been written in response to the global transformation of our economies to services. Clearly, skills in marketing and managing services have never been more important!

As the field of services marketing has evolved, so too has this book. This new edition has been revised significantly since the third edition to capture the reality of today's world, incorporating recent academic and managerial thinking while illustrating cutting-edge service concepts.

This book is based on *Services Marketing: People, Technology, Strategy*, 9th edition (World Scientific). It has been significantly condensed and sharpened to provide a crisp introduction to key topics in services marketing. In addition, the case selection, visuals, and design have been designed to appeal to undergraduate and polytechnic students.

WHAT'S NEW IN THIS EDITION?

The fourth edition represents a significant revision. Its contents reflect ongoing developments in the service economy, dramatic developments in technology, and new research findings.

New Topics, New Research

- ▶ Each of the 15 chapters has been revised. All chapters incorporate **new examples** and the **latest academic research**.
- ▶ New **applications of technology** are integrated throughout the text, ranging from service robots, artificial intelligence (AI), and intelligent automation (IA), to peer-to-peer sharing platforms and digital business models.
- ▶ Chapter 3, “Positioning Services in Competitive Markets,” has a new section on **digital services** and **platform business models**.
- ▶ Chapter 4, “Developing Service Products and Brands,” has now a tighter focus on **productizing services** (i.e., “bundles of output”), an expanded section on branding of services, and a new section on service design thinking.



Figure 6.23 Cruise packages bundle land tours into their total package price.

- ▶ Chapter 8, “Designing Service Processes,” has new in-depth coverage of **service robots** and **AI-powered self-service technologies** (SSTs).
- ▶ Chapter 14, “Improving Service Quality and Productivity,” features a heavily revised section on **customer feedback systems** and **collection tools** to reflect the rapid development of automated rating systems, user-generated content on review sites, and third-party (social) media, as well as their analysis using natural language processing, image processing, and other technologies.
- ▶ Chapter 15, “Building a World-Class Service Organization,” features new sections on the strategic pathways toward achieving **cost-effective service excellence (CESE)** and the **wallet allocation rule**.

FOR WHAT TYPES OF COURSES CAN THIS BOOK BE USED?

This text is equally suitable for courses directed at undergraduate and polytechnic students. *Essentials in Services Marketing* places marketing issues within a broader general management context. The book will appeal to students heading for a career in the service sector, whether at the executive or the management level.

Whatever their job is in the services industry, a person has to understand the close ties that link the functions of marketing, operations, IT, and human resources in service firms. With that perspective in mind, the book has been designed so that instructors can make selective use of chapters and cases to teach courses of different lengths and formats in either services marketing or services management.

WHAT ARE THE BOOK'S DISTINGUISHING FEATURES?

- ▶ You'll find that this text takes a **strongly managerial perspective** yet is **rooted in solid academic research**, complemented by memorable frameworks. This book's goal is to bridge the all-too-frequent gap between theory and the real world.
- ▶ Each chapter provides a succinct **chapter overview in pictorial form**.
- ▶ Every effort has been made to create a text that is **clear, readable, and focused**.
- ▶ An **easy-to-read text** combines with visuals to make important concepts accessible.
- ▶ A **global perspective** has been cultivated by carefully selecting examples from around the world.

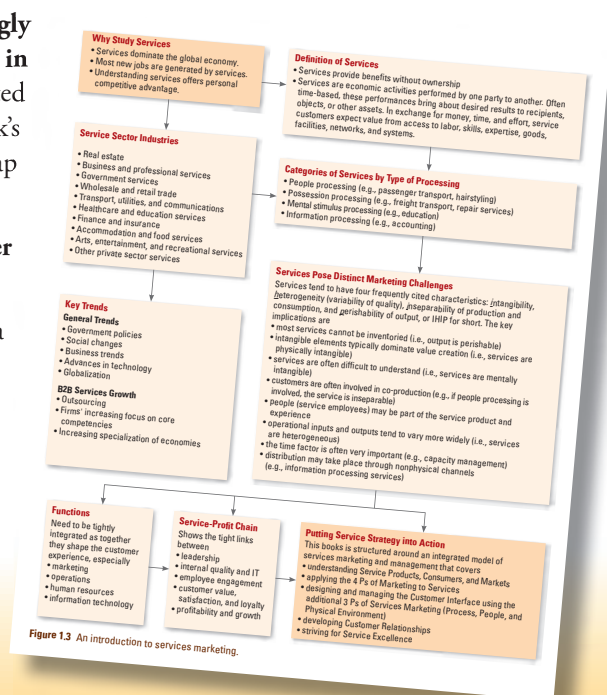


Figure 1.3 An introduction to services marketing.

OPENING VIGNETTE

TOO LITTLE, TOO LATE—JETBLUE'S SERVICE RECOVERY!

An airline form in the East Coast of the United States carried hundreds of passengers to be trapped for 11 hours in the JetBlue plane at the John F. Kennedy International Airport in New York. These passengers were to have flown on JetBlue as scheduled but were grounded on the plane. In addition, JetBlue cancelled more than 1,000 flights over six days, leaving even more passengers stranded. The incident cancelled out much of the JetBlue had done right to be one of the stronger airlines in the United States. The company was going to be a big number one by BusinessWeek. It had a list of top 25 customer service leaders but was pulled from the ranking due to the service failure. What happened?

There was no service recovery plan. No one was in the office. The flight attendants, on their own, made up the only way to get the passengers off the plane. JetBlue offered a credit to the passengers who did not return to the airport. David Needleman, JetBlue's CEO at the time, sent a personal email to all customers. The company did not have to explain what caused the problem, apologize profusely, and detail the service recovery effort. He even apologized on the flight itself for the apology, and he admitted that the airline could have had better contingency planning. However, the airline did not have a long way to go to repair the damage done.



Figure 13.1 JetBlue's new Customer Bill of Rights is a part of a campaign involving The Simpsons as one of the measures taken to win customers back.

Gradually, JetBlue rebuilt its reputation, starting with its new Customer Bill of Rights. The airline required the pilots to provide vouchers or refunds in certain situations when flights were delayed. Needleman also changed JetBlue's information systems to keep track of the locations of its crew and trained staff at the headquarters to help out at the airport when needed. All these actions were aimed at helping the company climb its way back up to the heights of its former JetBlue Airways management. The flight to Customer Service Company is managed by LSA Power, a multi-research firm that provides customer satisfaction and flight safety on the JetBlue system. The company is now helping JetBlue customers and the airline to recover from the incident and to rebuild its reputation.



Figure 13.2 JetBlue's reputation for customer service excellence was temporarily grounded when an ice storm caught the airline unprepared.

- ▶ To ensure a **systematic learning approach**, each chapter has clear **learning objectives**, an **organizing framework** that provides a **quick overview** of the chapter's contents and line of argument, and **chapter summaries in bullet form** that condense the core concepts and messages of each chapter.
- ▶ **Opening vignettes and boxed inserts** within the chapters are designed to capture student interest and provide opportunities for in-class discussions.

The following table links the cases to the chapters in the book.

CASES		PRIMARY CHAPTERS
1	Sullivan Ford Auto World	1
2	Susan Munro, Service Consumer	2
3	Dr. Beckett's Dental Office	1, 2
4	Uber's Unintended Burdens	3, 11
5	Kiwi Experience	4, 5, 7
6	The Accra Beach Hotel: Block Booking of Capacity during a Peak Period	6
7	Revenue Management at The View	6, 8, 9
8	Aussie Pooch Mobile	7, 8
9	Service Robots in the Frontline: How Will Aarion Bank's Customers Respond?	8, 11
10	Digital Luxury Services: Tradition versus Innovation in Luxury Fashion	10
11	National Library Board, Singapore: Delivering Cost-Effective Service Excellence through Innovation and People	8, 11, 14
12	Red Lobster	11
13	Banyan Tree: Branding the Intangible	3, 4, 7, 11
14	Singapore Airlines: Managing Human Resources for Cost-Effective Service Excellence	11, 15
15	Menton Bank	11
16	Dr. Mahalee Goes to London: Global Client Management	12
17	Platform versus Pipeline Business Models: Are Airbnb and Marriott Right to Move into Each Other's Turf?	3, 12, 15

**SECONDARY
CHAPTERS****CONTINENT****COUNTRY****INDUSTRY**

2

Americas

United States

Automobile Servicing

Americas

United States

Range of B2C Services

Americas

United States

Medical

4, 5, 7, 12

Americas/Global

United States

Transportation

3, 11

Oceania

New Zealand

Tourism

9

Americas

Barbados

Resort

Australia

Australia

Food & Beverage

5

Australia

Australia

Pet Grooming

11, 14, 15

Global

Banking

2, 8, 11

Global

Luxury Retail

15

Asia

Singapore

Library

Americas

United States

Food & Beverage

5

Asia/Global

Resort

3, 4, 8

Global

Airline

Americas

United States

Banking

8

Europe

United Kingdom

Private Banking

Americas/Global

United States

Hotels

CASES		PRIMARY CHAPTERS
18	The Royal Dining Membership Program Dilemma	12
19	The Broadstripe Service Guarantee	13
20	What Drives Share of Streaming for Streaming Video Services? The Launch of HBO Max	15
21	LUX*: Staging a Service Revolution in a Resort Chain	11, 12, 14, 15
Cases Available on the Instructor's Resource Website (IRW)		
22	Bouleau & Huntley: Cross-Selling Professional Services	2, 3
23	Uber: Competing as Market Leader in the United States versus Being a Distant Second in China	3
24	Jollibee Foods Corporation	3, 4, 5
25	Hotel Imperial	3, 4
26	Giordano: Positioning for International Expansion	3, 5
27	Revenue Management of Gondolas: Maintaining the Balance between Tradition and Revenue	6
28	Bossard Asia Pacific: Can It Make Its CRM Strategy Work?	12
29	Customer Asset Management at DHL in Asia	12

**SECONDARY
CHAPTERS****CONTINENT****COUNTRY****INDUSTRY**

6

Asia

Hong Kong

Food and Beverage

Americas

United States

Cable Service

Americas

United States

Streaming Service

2, 3

Asia/Global

Mauritius

Resort

3

Asia/Americas

Philippines/United
StatesManagement Consulting/
Auditing

4, 5, 7, 12

Asia/Americas

China/United
States

Transportation

Asia

Philippines

Fast Food

Europe

Eastern Europe

Hotel/Hospitality

11

Asia/Global

Clothing Retailing

Europe

Italy

Tourism

Asia

Singapore

Industrial Supplies

Asia

Logistics

What Aids Are Available for Instructors?

We have developed pedagogical aids to help instructors develop and teach courses built around this book and to create stimulating learning experiences for students both in and out of the classroom.

Teaching Aids within the Text

- ▶ An opening vignette, which highlights key issues discussed in the chapter
- ▶ Learning objectives and milestone markers for these when a section provides material that meet these learning objectives
- ▶ Boxed inserts throughout the chapters, which often lend themselves well to in-class discussion
- ▶ Interesting graphics, photographs, and reproductions of advertisements, which enhance student learning, and provide opportunities for discussion
- ▶ Keywords, which help to reinforce important terms and concepts
- ▶ Chapter summaries, which meet each chapter's learning objectives
- ▶ Review Questions and Application Exercises located at the end of each chapter



Pedagogical Materials Available from the Publisher

Case Bank: A large set of additional cases that can be used in courses that adopt this textbook. Available in both Word and PDF versions as a resource for instructors. A table shown in the textbook will suggest which cases to pair with which chapters.

Instructor's Manual: A repository of detailed course design and teaching hints, including sample course outlines; chapter-by-chapter teaching suggestions, plus discussion of learning objectives and sample responses to study questions and exercises; suggested student exercises and comprehensive projects (designed for either individual or team work); detailed case teaching notes, including teaching objectives, suggested study questions, in-depth analysis of each question, and helpful hints on teaching strategy designed to aid student learning, create stimulating class discussions, and help instructors create end-of-class wrap-ups and “takeaways.”

Test Bank: Multiple choice, true/false, short-answer, and essay questions, with difficulty level provided for each question. Contents are classified into general and application. This is available in TestGen format, a test-generating program that allows instructors to add, edit, or delete questions from the test item file; analyze test results; and organize a database of exams and student results.

PowerPoint Slides: The slides are linked to each chapter and featuring both “word” slides and graphics. All slides have been designed to be clear, comprehensible, and easily readable.

Image Bank: A collection of images in the textbook.

EBook: Electronic version of the text that includes useful features such as highlighting and search. It can be viewed on a variety of browsers and devices.

Acknowledgments

Over the years, many colleagues in both the academic and business worlds have provided me with valued insights into the marketing and management of services through their publications, in conference and seminar discussions, and in stimulating individual conversations. In addition, I have benefited enormously from in-class and after-class discussions with my students and executive program participants.

I am much indebted to those researchers and teachers who helped to pioneer the study of services marketing and management, and from whose work we continue to draw inspiration. Among them are John Bateson of Cass Business School, Leonard Berry of Texas A&M University, Mary Jo Bitner and Stephen Brown of Arizona State University, David Bowen of Thunderbird Graduate School of Management, Richard Chase of the University of Southern California, Bo Edvardsson of University of Karlstad, Raymond Fisk of the Texas State University, Christian Grönroos of the Swedish School of Economics in Finland, Stephen Grove of Clemson University, Evert Gummesson of Stockholm University, James Heskett and Earl Sasser of Harvard University, A. “Parasu” Parasuraman of University of Miami, Roland Rust of the University of Maryland, Benjamin Schneider (formerly) of the University of Maryland, and Valarie Zeithaml of the University of North Carolina. I salute, too, the contributions of the late Pierre Eiglier, Eric Langeard, Robert Johnston, and Daryl Wyckoff.

Although it’s impossible to mention everyone who has influenced our thinking, we particularly want to express our appreciation to the following: Lerzan Aksoy of Fordham University, Tor Andreassen of the Norwegian School of Management; Steve Baron of the University of Liverpool; Sabine Benoit of Surrey Business School; Ruth Bolton of Arizona State University; Elisabeth Brügggen, Gaby Odekerken-Schröder, and Jos Lemmink, all of Maastricht University; John Deighton, Theodore Levitt, and Leonard Schlesinger, all currently or formerly of Harvard Business School; Michael Ehret of the University of Graz; Martin Fritze of the University of Cologne; Thorsten Gruber of Loughborough University; Anders Gustafsson of BI Norwegian Business School; Jens Hogreve of Katholische Universität Eichstätt-Ingolstadt; Paul Maglio of the University of California, Merced, USA; Irene Ng of the University of Warwick; Jay Kandampully of Ohio State University; Ron Kaufman, Customer Experience and Service Culture Expert; Tim Keiningham of St. John’s University; Sheryl Kimes of Cornell University; Werner Kunz of the University of Massachusetts Boston; Bart Larivière of the University of Leuven; Jean-Claude Larréché of INSEAD; Jos Lemmink of Maastricht University; Kay Lemon of Boston College; David Maister of Maister Associates; Anna Mattila of Pennsylvania State University; Janet McColl-Kennedy of the University of Queensland; Martin Mende of Florida State University; Linda Alkire of Texas State University; Ulrich Orth of Kiel University; Chiara Orsingher of the University of Bologna; Lia Patrício of the University of Porto; Anat Rafaeli of Technion-Israeli Institute of Technology, Ram Ramaseshan of Curtin University; Chatura Ranaweera of Wilfrid Laurier University; Mark Rosenbaum of Saint Xavier University; Rebekah Russell-Bennett of Queensland University of Technology; Jim Spohrer of IBM; Bernd Stauss, formerly of Katholische Universität Eichstätt; Christopher Tang of UCLA; Rodoula Tsiotsou of University of Macedonia; Steven Vargo of University of Hawaii; Rohit Verma of VinUniversity; Lauren Wright of California State University, Chico; George Yip of London Business School; Ping Xiao of the National University of Singapore; and Valarie Zeithaml of the University of North Carolina.

We've also gained important insights from our co-authors on international adaptations of *Services Marketing* and are grateful for the friendship and collaboration of Guillermo D'Andrea of Universidad Austral, Argentina; Harvir S. Bansal of University of Waterloo, Canada; Jayanta Chatterjee of the Indian Institute of Technology, Kanpur, India; Gopal Das of the Indian Institute of Management Bangalore, India; Chris Lin of National Taiwan University; Xiucheng Fan of Fudan University, China; Miguel Angelo Hemzo of Universidade de São Paulo, Brazil; Hean Tat Keh of the University of Queensland, Australia; Luis Huete of IESE, Spain; Laura Iacovone of the University of Milan and Bocconi University, Italy; Denis Lapert of Telecom École de Management, France; Barbara Lewis of the Manchester School of Management, UK; Xiongwen Lu of Fudan University, China; Annie Munos, Euromed Marseille École de Management, France; Jacky Mussry of MarkPlus, Inc., Indonesia; Javier Reynoso of Tec de Monterrey, Mexico; Paul Patterson of the University of New South Wales, Australia; Sandra Vandermerwe of Imperial College, London, UK; Fuxing Wei of Tianshi College, China; and Yoshio Shirai of Takasaki City University of Economics, Japan.

It takes more than authors to create a book and its supplements. Warm thanks are due to the editing and production team who worked hard to transform our manuscript into a handsome published text. They include Ishita Sinha, the book's acquisitions editor, and Daniel Luiz and Kajori Chattopadhyay, its project editors. Thanks also to Gavin Fox of Texas Tech University, author of the third edition test bank, and to Jon Sutherland for the additions in the fourth edition. Finally, I'd like to thank you, the reader, for your interest in this exciting and fast-evolving field of services marketing.

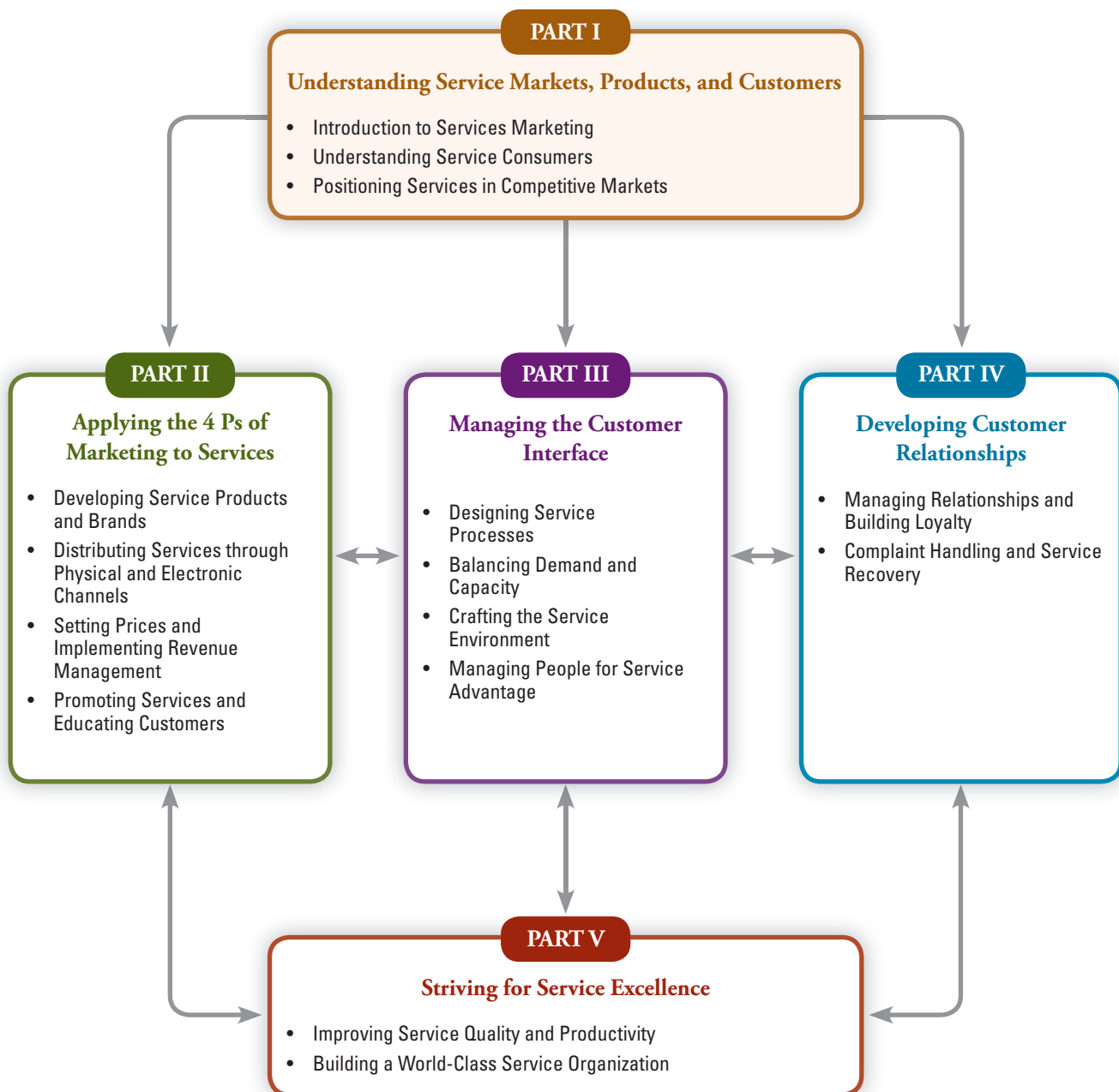
Finally, if you have interesting research, examples, stories, cases, videos, or any other materials that would look good in the next edition of this book, or any feedback, please do contact me via www.JochenWirtz.com. I'd love to hear from you!

JOCHEN WIRTZ



I

THE *ESM* FRAMEWORK



Understanding Service Markets, Products, and Customers

Part I lays the building blocks for studying services and learning how one can become an effective service marketer. It consists of the following three chapters:



Chapter 1 Introduction to Services Marketing

Chapter 1 highlights the importance of services in our economies. We also define the nature of services and how they create value for customers without transfer of ownership. The chapter highlights some distinctive challenges involved in marketing services and introduces the 7 Ps of services marketing.

The framework shown on the facing page will accompany us throughout as it forms the basis for each of the four parts in this book. It describes in a systematic manner of what is involved in developing marketing strategies for different types of services. The framework is introduced and explained in Chapter 1.

Chapter 2 Understanding Service Consumers

Chapter 2 provides a foundation for understanding consumer needs and behavior related to services. The chapter is organized around the three-stage model of service consumption that explores how customers search for and evaluate alternative services, make purchase decisions, experience and respond to service encounters, evaluate service performance, and finally, develop loyalty.

Chapter 3 Positioning Services in Competitive Markets

Chapter 3 discusses how to develop a customer-driven services marketing strategy and how a value proposition should be positioned in a way that creates competitive advantage for the firm. This chapter first links the customer, competitor, and company (commonly referred to as 3 Cs) to a firm's positioning strategy. The core of the chapter is then organized around the three key elements of positioning—segmentation, targeting, and positioning (commonly referred to as "STP")—and shows how firms can segment a service market, position their value proposition, and finally focus on attracting their target segment.

SERVICES

MARKETING

LEARNING OBJECTIVES (LOs)

By the end of this chapter, the reader should be able to:

- ▶ **LO 1** Understand how services contribute to a country's economy.
- ▶ **LO 2** Know the principal industries of the service sector.
- ▶ **LO 3** Identify the powerful forces that are transforming service markets.
- ▶ **LO 4** Understand how B2B services improve the productivity of individual firms and drive economic development.
- ▶ **LO 5** Define services using the non-ownership framework.
- ▶ **LO 6** Identify the four broad "processing" categories of services.
- ▶ **LO 7** Be familiar with the characteristics of services and the distinctive marketing challenges they pose.
- ▶ **LO 8** Understand the components of the traditional marketing mix applied to services.
- ▶ **LO 9** Describe the components of the extended marketing mix for managing the customer interface.
- ▶ **LO 10** Appreciate that marketing, operations, human resource management, and IT functions need to be closely integrated in service businesses.
- ▶ **LO 11** Understand the implications of the service-profit chain for service management.
- ▶ **LO 12** Know the five-part framework for developing effective services marketing strategies.



rawpixel123rf

Figure 1.1 Tertiary education may be one of the biggest service purchases in life.

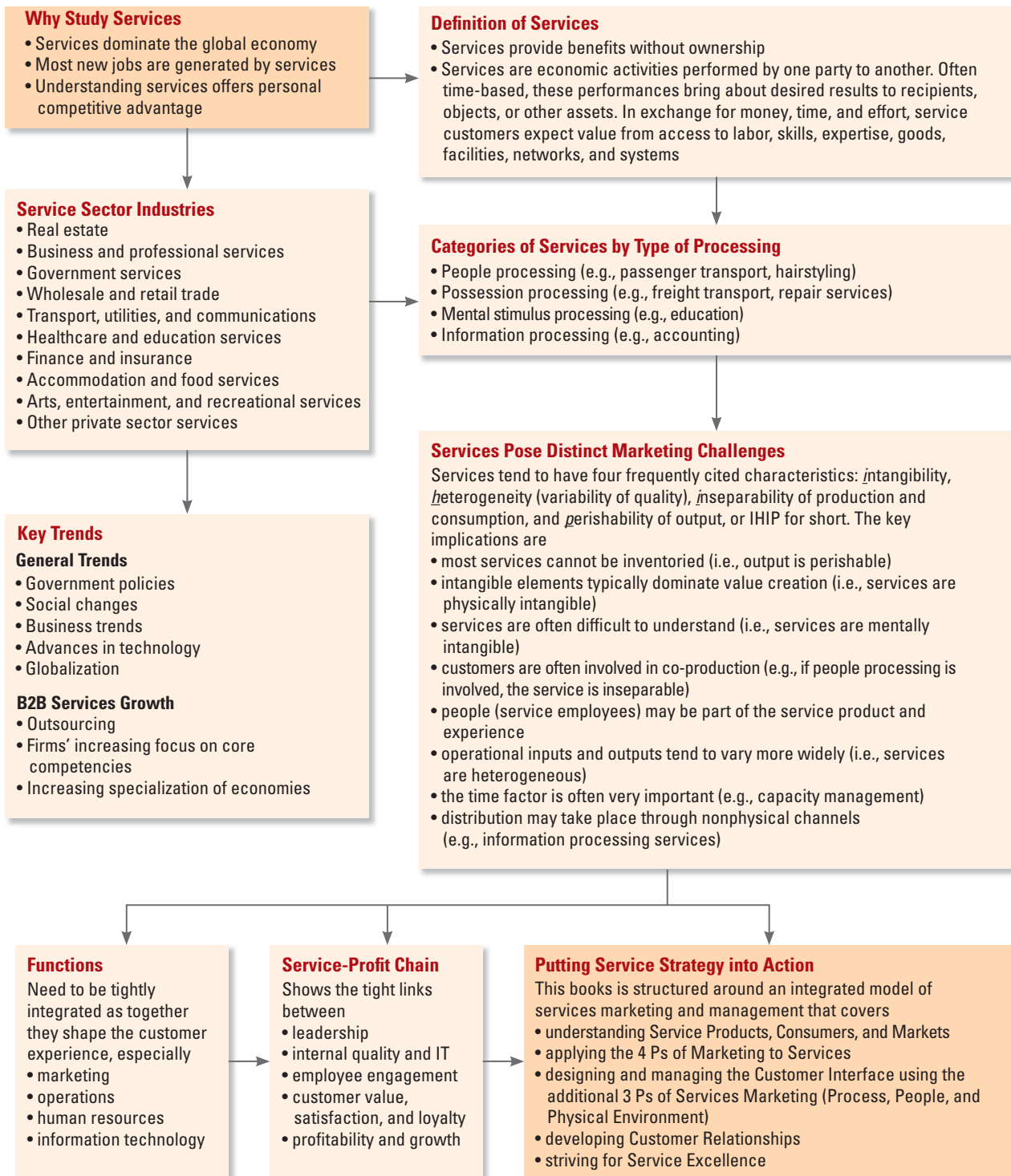


Figure 1.3 An introduction to services marketing.

CHAPTER SUMMARY

- LO 1** ▶ Services represent an important and growing contribution to most economies in the world. As economies develop, services form the largest part of their GDP. Globally, most new jobs are generated in the service sector.
- LO 2** ▶ The principal industries of the service sector include (in order of contribution to GDP) the following:
- o Real-estate services
 - o Business and professional services
 - o Government services
 - o Wholesale and retail trade
 - o Transport, utilities, and communications services
 - o Healthcare services
 - o Finance and insurance
 - o Accommodation and food services
 - o Arts, entertainment, and recreation services
- LO 3** ▶ Many forces are transforming our economies, making them more service-oriented. They include government policies, social changes, business trends, advances in information technology, and globalization.
- LO 4** ▶ Business services allow manufacturing firms and other service organizations to outsource non-core activities, processes, and assets. The benefits include the following:
- o Economies of scale and scope as well as high quality and productivity levels
 - o Tight cost and quality control (performance can be benchmarked across many sites)
 - o Application of process improvements and R&D
- The rapid growth of business services leads to an increasing specialization of advanced economies with significant gains in overall productivity and standards of living.
- LO 5** ▶ What exactly is a service? The key distinguishing feature of a service is that it is a form of rental rather than ownership. Service customers obtain the rights to hire the labor, skills, and expertise of personnel; use a physical object or space; or access shared facilities, networks, and systems. Services are performances that bring about the desired results or experience for the customer.
- LO 6** ▶ Services vary widely and can be categorized according to the nature of the underlying process. There are four broad categories of services:
- o People processing
 - o Possession processing
 - o Mental stimulus processing
 - o Information processing
- Mental stimulus and information processing can collectively be called information-based services.
- LO 7** ▶ Services have unique characteristics that make them different from products:
- o Most service products cannot be inventoried (i.e., they are perishable).
 - o Intangible elements usually dominate value creation (i.e., they are physically intangible).
 - o Services are often difficult to visualize and understand (i.e., they are mentally intangible).
 - o Customers may be involved in co-production (i.e., if people processing is involved, the service is inseparable).
 - o People may be part of the service experience.
 - o Operational inputs and outputs tend to vary widely (i.e., they are heterogeneous).
 - o The time factor often assumes great importance.
 - o Distribution may take place through nonphysical channels.
- LO 8** ▶ Due to the unique characteristics of services, the traditional marketing mix of the 4 Ps needs to be amended. Some important amendments are as follows:
- o *Product elements* include not only the core elements, but also supplementary service elements such as the provision of consultation or hospitality, or the handling of exceptions.
 - o *Place and time* elements refer to the delivery of the product elements to the customer.
 - o *Pricing* includes non-monetary costs to the consumer and revenue management considerations.
 - o *Promotion* does not focus only on advertising and promotions but is also viewed as a form of communication and education that guides customers through service processes.
- LO 9** ▶ Services marketing requires three additional Ps that cover management of the customer interface:
- o *Process* refers to the design and management of customer service processes, including managing demand and capacity and related customer waits.
 - o *Physical environment*, also known as the servicescape, facilitates process delivery and provides tangible evidence of a firm's image and service quality.
 - o *People* covers the recruitment, training, and motivation of service employees to deliver service quality and productivity.

CHAPTER SUMMARY

- ▶ **LO 10** ▶ To be successful, marketing, operations, human resource, and IT management functions need to be tightly integrated. Integration means that the key deliverables and objectives of the various functions are not only compatible but also mutually reinforcing.
- ▶ **LO 11** ▶ The service–profit chain shows how successful service firms integrate key management functions and deliver high-quality performance in several related areas:
 - o Customer relationships must be managed effectively, and there must be strategies to build and sustain loyalty.
 - o Value must be created and delivered to the target customers in ways that lead them to see the firm’s offerings as superior to competing offerings.
 - o Service quality and productivity must be continuously improved through better processes, systems and tools, and IT.
 - o Service employees must be enabled and motivated.
 - o Top management’s leadership needs to drive and support all the components of the service–profit chain.
- ▶ **LO 12** ▶ A framework for services marketing strategy forms the underlying structure of this book. The framework consists of the following five interlinked parts:
 - o Part I begins with the need for service firms to understand their markets, customers, and competition.
 - o Part II shows us how to apply the traditional 4 Ps to services marketing.
 - o Part III covers the 3 Ps of the extended services marketing mix and shows how to manage the customer interface.
 - o Part IV illustrates how to develop lasting customer relationships through a variety of tools, ranging from the Wheel of Loyalty and CRM to effective complaint management and service guarantees.
 - o Part V discusses how to improve service quality and productivity. This part closes with a discussion on how change management and leadership can propel a firm to become a service leader.

Endnotes

1. Jochen Wirtz, Paul Patterson, Werner Kunz, Thorsten Gruber, Vinh Nhat Lu, Stefanie Paluch, and Antje Martins, "Brave New World: Service Robots in the Frontline," *Journal of Service Management* 29(5) (2018): 907–931; and Jochen Wirtz and Valarie Zeithaml, "Cost-Effective Service Excellence," *Journal of the Academy of Marketing Science* 46(1) (2018): 59–80.
 2. Roland T. Rust and Ming-Hui Huang, "The Service Revolution and the Transformation of Marketing Science," *Marketing Science* 33(2) (2014): 206–221; and Ming-Hui Huang and Roland T. Rust, "Artificial Intelligence in Service," *Journal of Service Research* 21(2) (2018): 155–72.
 3. This section is based on Jochen Wirtz and Michael Ehret, "Service-Based Business Models: Transforming Businesses, Industries and Economies," in Raymond P. Fisk, Rebekah Russell-Bennett, and Lloyd C. Harris (eds.), *Serving Customers: Global Services Marketing Perspectives* (Melbourne: Tilde University Press, 2013), pp. 28–46. For firms' motivation to use non-ownership services, see also Kristina Wittkowski, Sabine Möller, and Jochen Wirtz, "Firms' Intentions to Use Non-Ownership Services," *Journal of Service Research* 16(2) (2013): 171–85.
 4. Lesley Brown (ed.), *Shorter Oxford English Dictionary*, 5th edition (2002).
 5. John M. Rathmell, "What Is Meant by Services?," *Journal of Marketing* 30 (October 1966): 32–36.
 6. Evert Gummesson (citing an unknown source), in "Lip Service: A Neglected Area in Services Marketing," *Journal of Consumer Services* 1 (Summer 1987): 19–22.
 7. Christopher H. Lovelock and Evert Gummesson, "Whither Services Marketing? In Search of a New Paradigm and Fresh Perspectives," *Journal of Service Research* 7 (August 2004): 20–41.
 8. Adapted from a definition by Christopher Lovelock (identified anonymously as Expert 6, Table II, p. 112) in Bo Edvardsson, Anders Gustafsson, and Inger Roos, "Service Portraits in Service Research: A Critical Review," *International Journal of Service Industry Management* 16(1) (2005): 107–21.
 9. Wolfgang Ulaga and Werner J. Reinartz, "Hybrid Offerings: How Manufacturing Firms Combine Goods and Services Successfully," *Journal of Marketing* 75(6) (2011): 5–23; Bernhard Dachs, Sabiene Biege, Martin Borowiecki, Gunter Lay, Angela Jäger, and Doris Schartinger, "Servitisation of European Manufacturing: Evidence from a Large Scale Database," *The Service Industries Journal* 34(1)(2014): 5–23; Andreas Eggert, Jens Hogreve, Wolfgang Ulaga, and Eva Muenkhoff, "Revenue and Profit Implications of Industrial Service Strategies," *Journal of Service Research* 17(1) (2014): 23–39; and Brett W. Josephson, Jean L. Johnson, Babu John Mariadoss, and John Cullen, "Service Transition Strategies in Manufacturing: Implications for Firm Risk," *Journal of Service Research* 19(2) (2016): 142–157.
 10. From Theodore Levitt, *Marketing for Business Growth* (McGraw-Hill, 1974).
 11. Stephen L. Vargo and Robert R. Lusch, "Evolving to a New Dominant Logic for Marketing," *Journal of Marketing* 68(1) (2004): 1–17; Stephen L. Vargo and Robert R. Lusch, "Service-Dominant Logic: Continuing the Evolution," *Journal of the Academy of Marketing Science* 36(1) (2008): 1–10.
 12. These classifications are derived from Christopher H. Lovelock, "Classifying Services to Gain Strategic Marketing Insights," *Journal of Marketing* 47 (Summer 1983): 9–20.
 13. Valarie A. Zeithaml, A. Parasuraman, and Leonard L. Berry, "Problems and Strategies in Services Marketing," *Journal of Marketing* 49 (Spring 1985): 33–46.
 14. G. Lynn Shostack, "Breaking Free from Product Marketing," *Journal of Marketing* 41 (April 1977): 73–80.
 15. An expanded 7 Ps marketing mix was first proposed by Bernard H. Booms and Mary J. Bitner, "Marketing Strategies and Organization Structures for Service Firms," in J.H. Donnelly and W.-R. George (eds.), *Marketing of Services* (Chicago: American Marketing Association, 1981), pp. 47–51.
 16. From Gary Knisely, "Greater Marketing Emphasis by Holiday Inns Breaks Mold," *Advertising Age* (January 15, 1979).
 17. The term "servicescape" was coined by Mary Jo Bitner, "Servicescapes: The Impact of Physical Surroundings on Customers and Employees," *Journal of Marketing* 56 (April 1992): 57–71.
 18. From J. L. Heskett, T. O. Jones, G. W. Loveman, W. E. Sasser Jr., and L. A. Schlesinger, "Putting the Service-Profit Chain to Work," (Harvard Business School 1994).
- A meta-analysis of 576 independent datasets confirmed all core relationships of the service-profit chain (SPC). However, additional important direct effects and moderators were found. For example, internal service quality not only has direct effects on employee satisfaction but also direct positive effects on employee productivity, external service quality, and firm profitability. Furthermore, customer responses do not only depend on external service quality. Rather, customer responses are also directly determined by employee satisfaction and employee productivity. See the full study with its extensive online appendices for details: Jens Hogreve, Anja Iseke, Klaus Derfuss, and Tönnjes Eller, "The Service-Profit Chain: A Meta-Analytic Test of a Comprehensive Theoretical Framework," *Journal of Marketing* 81(3) (2017): 41–61.

understanding SERVICE CONSUMERS

LEARNING OBJECTIVES (LOs)

By the end of this chapter, the reader should be able to:

- ▶ **LO 1** Understand the three-stage model of service consumption.
- ▶ **LO 2** Use the multi-attribute model to understand how consumers evaluate and choose between alternative service offerings.
- ▶ **LO 3** Learn why consumers often have difficulty evaluating services, especially those with many experience and credence attributes.
- ▶ **LO 4** Know the perceived risks customers face in purchasing services and the strategies firms can use to reduce consumer risk perceptions.
- ▶ **LO 5** Understand how customers form service expectations and the components of these expectations.
- ▶ **LO 6** Understand the “moment of truth” metaphor.
- ▶ **LO 7** Contrast how customers experience and evaluate high-versus low-contact services.
- ▶ **LO 8** Be familiar with the servuction model and understand the interactions that together create the service experience.
- ▶ **LO 9** Obtain insights from viewing the service encounter as a form of theater.
- ▶ **LO 10** Know how role, script, and perceived control theories contribute to a better understanding of service encounters.
- ▶ **LO 11** Describe how customers evaluate services and what determines their satisfaction.
- ▶ **LO 12** Understand service quality, its dimensions and measurement, and how quality relates to customer loyalty.
- ▶ **LO 13** Know why customer loyalty is such an important outcome of excellent service experiences.



Tonobalaguer/123RF

Figure 2.1 New York University is the gateway to a brighter future for students like Susan Munro.

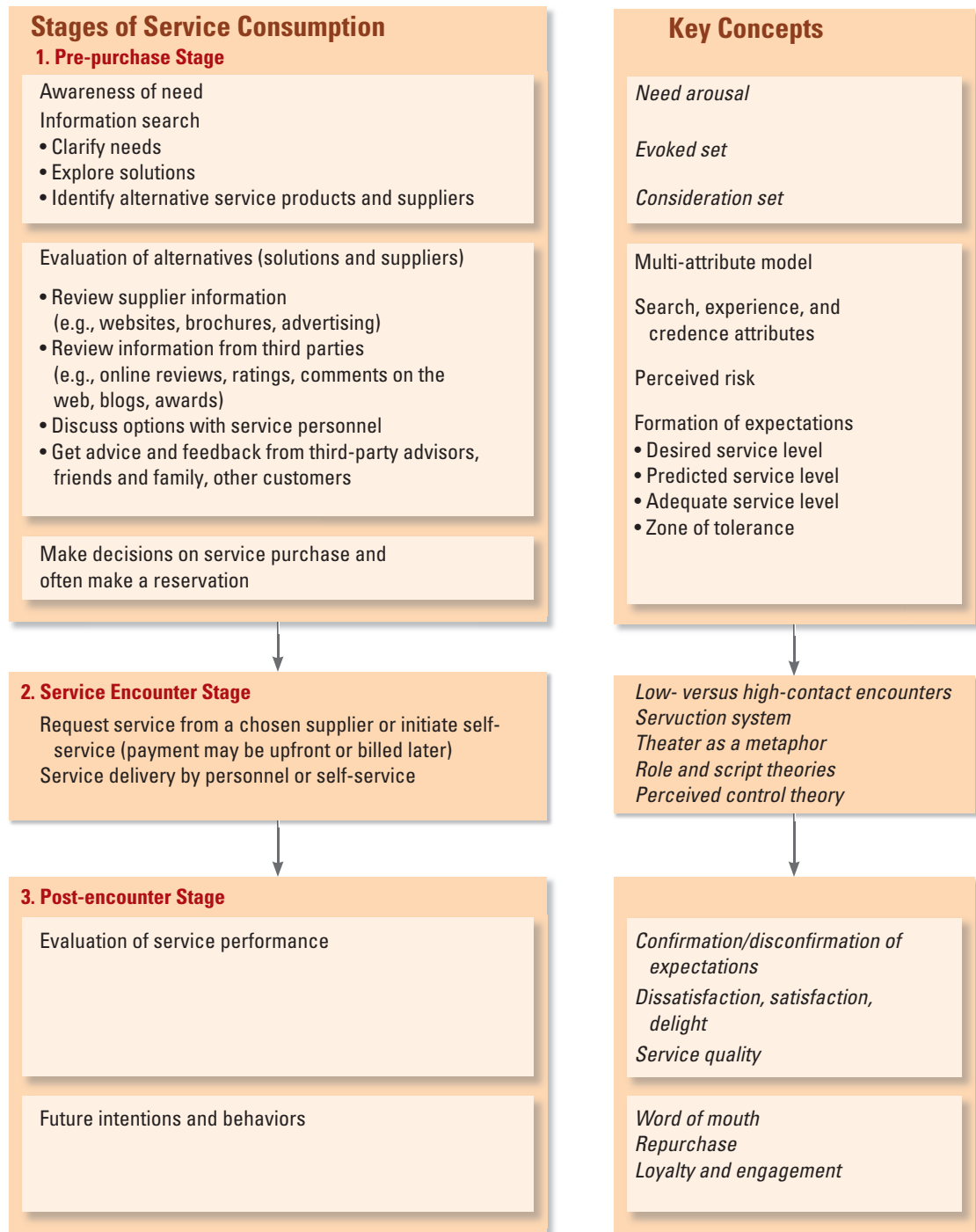


Figure 2.3 The three-stage model of service consumption.

OPENING VIGNETTE

SUSAN MUNRO, SERVICE CONSUMER¹

Susan Munro, a final-year business student, had breakfast and then checked the weather app on her iPhone. It predicted rain, so she grabbed an umbrella before leaving the apartment. On the way to the bus stop, she dropped a letter in a mailbox. The bus arrived on schedule. It was the usual driver, who recognized her and greeted her cheerfully as she showed her commuter pass.

On arriving at her destination, Susan walked to the College of Business. Joining a crowd of other students, she found a seat in the lecture theater where her marketing class was held. Susan made several contributions to the discussion and felt that she had learned a lot from listening to others' analyses and opinions.

After class, Susan and her friends ate lunch at the recently renovated Student Union. It was a well-lit and colorfully decorated food court, featuring a variety of small stores. These included both local suppliers and brand-name fast-food chains. Although Susan wanted a sandwich, there was a long queue at the Subway outlet. Instead, she joined her friends at Burger King and then splurged on a *caffè latte* from the *Have-a-Java* coffee stand. The food court was unusually crowded, perhaps because of the rain. When they finally found a table, they had to clear away dirty trays. "Lazy slob!" her friend Mark remarked, referring to the previous customers.

After lunch, Susan stopped at an ATM, inserted her bank card, and withdrew some money. Then she remembered that she had a job interview at the end of the week, so she telephoned her hairdresser and made an appointment for later. When she left the Student Union, the rain had stopped and the sun was shining.

Susan looked forward to her visit to the hairdresser. The store, which had a bright, trendy *décor*, was staffed by friendly hairdressers. Unfortunately, the hairstylist was running late,

and Susan had to wait for 20 minutes. She used that time to review a human resources course.

Eventually, it was time for a shampoo, after which the hairstylist proposed a slightly different cut. Susan agreed, although she drew the line at the suggestion that she lighten her hair color. She had never done it before and was unsure about how it would look. She did not want to take the risk just before her job interview. She sat still, watching the process in the mirror and turning her head when asked. She was pleased with the result and complimented the hairstylist on his work. She tipped him and paid at the reception desk.

On the way home, Susan stopped by the dry cleaners to pick up some clothes. The store was gloomy and smelled of cleaning solution, and the walls needed repainting. She was annoyed to find that although her silk blouse was ready as promised, the suit that she needed for the interview was not. The assistant, who had dirty fingernails, mumbled an apology in an insincere tone. Although the store was conveniently located and the quality of work was good, Susan thought the employees were unfriendly and unhelpful, and she was unhappy with their service. However, she had no choice but to use them as there were no other dry cleaners nearby.

Back at her apartment building, she opened the mailbox in the lobby. Her mail included a bill from her insurance company. However, it required no action, as the payment had been deducted automatically from her MasterCard account. She was about to throw away the junk mail when she noticed a flyer promoting a new dry-cleaning store nearby. It even included a discount coupon. She decided to try out the new firm and kept the coupon.

This story of Susan's day as a service consumer will follow us throughout this chapter to illustrate service-related consumer behavior concepts and theories.



Christo/Shutterstock

Figure 2.2 Susan is just another customer facing a large selection of services out there.

CHAPTER SUMMARY

LO 1 ▶ Service consumption can be divided into the following three stages: (1) pre-purchase stage, (2) service encounter stage, and (3) post-encounter stage.

- o The pre-purchase stage consists of the following four steps: (1) need awareness, (2) information search, (3) evaluation of alternative solutions and suppliers, and (4) making a purchase decision.

LO 2 ▶ The following theories help us understand consumer behavior during the pre-purchase stage:

- o Recognizing a need motivates customers to search for solutions to satisfy that need. Several alternatives may come to mind, and these form the evoked set. This is further narrowed down to a few alternatives that form the consideration set.
- o During the search process, consumers also learn about service attributes they should consider and form expectations about how firms in the consideration set perform on those attributes.
- o *Multi-attribute model.* Many decisions involve complex trade-offs along several attributes. The multi-attribute model simulates this decision-making by combining customers' attribute performance expectations for each firm in the consideration set and the importance weights of each attribute.
- o Two common consumer decision rules in the multi-attribute model are the linear compensatory rule and the conjunctive rule. Given the same attribute ratings, consumers can arrive at different decisions when different decision rules are applied.
- o Firms should actively manage key variables in the multi-attribute model to increase the chances of their service being the one chosen.

LO 3 ▶ *Service attributes.* Services are often difficult to evaluate because they tend to have a low proportion of search attributes and a high proportion of experience and credence attributes. Tangible cues become important, and firms need to manage them carefully to shape their customer's expectations and perceptions of experience and credence attributes.

LO 4 ▶ *Perceived risk.* Consumers perceive higher risk when buying services than when buying goods. As customers do not like to take risks, successful firms employ risk-reduction strategies such as offering free trials and guarantees.

LO 5 ▶ *Service expectations.* These are shaped by information search and the evaluation of service attributes. The components of expectations include desired, adequate, and predicted service levels. Between the desired and adequate service levels is the zone of tolerance, within which customers are willing to accept variation in service levels.

Purchase decision. The outcome of the pre-purchase stage is a purchase decision, based largely on service-level expectations and associated risk perceptions. Many decisions involve complex trade-offs along several attributes, typically including price.

LO 6 ▶ In the service encounter stage, the customer initiates, experiences, and consumes the service. A number of concepts and models help us to better understand customer behavior in this stage:

- o The "moments of truth" metaphor refers to customer touchpoints that can make or break a customer relationship.

LO 7 ▶ We distinguish between high- and low-contact services. High-contact services are challenging as they have many points of contact and moments of truth that have to be managed. In contrast, low-contact services are mostly delivered via apps, websites, chatbots, self-service machines (e.g., ATMs), or customer contact centers with relatively few customer interfaces.

LO 8 ▶ o The *servuction model* encompasses a technical core and a service delivery system.

- o The technical core is backstage and invisible to the customers, but what happens backstage can affect the quality of frontstage activities. Therefore, backstage activities have to be coordinated with frontstage activities.

- o The *service delivery system* is frontstage and visible to the customer. It encompasses all the interactions that create the service experience. In a high-contact service, it includes customer interactions with the service environment, service employees, and other customers. Each type of interaction can create or destroy value. Firms have to orchestrate all these interactions to create a satisfying service experience.

LO 9 ▶ *Theater can be used as a metaphor for service delivery.* Firms can view their service as the "staging" of a performance with props and actors and manage them accordingly. The props are the

CHAPTER SUMMARY

service facilities and equipment. The actors are the service employees and customers.

- ▶ **LO 10** ▶
 - o The actors need to understand their roles and scripts in order to perform their part of the service well. Firms can make use of the *role* and *script theories* to better design, train, communicate, and manage both employee and customer behaviors.
 - o Consumers have a need to feel in *control*. There are three types of control that can be designed into a service encounter: *behavioral control* (customers can change the service encounter according to their individual preferences), *decisional control* (they can choose between fixed options), and *cognitive control* (they understand what is happening and why, and they know what will happen next; the latter is also called *predictive control*).
 - o However, if processes, scripts, and roles are tightly defined (e.g., as in fast food or consumer banking), the scope for behavioral control is limited. Here, firms can focus on giving customers more decisional, cognitive, and predictive control.
- ▶ **LO 11** ▶ In the post-encounter stage, customers evaluate the service performance and compare it to their prior expectations.
 - o The *expectancy-disconfirmation model of satisfaction* holds that satisfaction judgments are formed by comparing service expectations with performance perceptions.
 - o Satisfaction is a continuum ranging from great satisfaction to deep dissatisfaction. As long as perceived performance falls within the zone of tolerance (that is, above the adequate service level), customers will be reasonably satisfied. If performance perceptions approach or exceed desired levels, customers will

be very satisfied. Performance below the adequate service level will result in dissatisfaction.

- ▶ **LO 12** ▶
 - o Excellent *service quality* means that a firm *consistently* meets or exceeds customer expectations.
 - o While customer satisfaction is transaction-specific and refers to a single service experience, service quality refers to a consumer's beliefs and attitudes about the general performance of a firm.
 - o Consumers use five broad dimensions to evaluate service quality: (1) tangibles, (2) reliability, (3) responsiveness, (4) assurance, and (5) empathy.
 - o In situations where customer satisfaction and service quality deviate (e.g., "I think the firm in general is great, but the last transaction was poor"), customers use their relatively stable perception of service quality to form their performance expectations for the next purchase. However, a second or third dissatisfaction evaluation will reduce the overall service quality perception of the firm more dramatically and jeopardize repeat visits.
 - o *SERVQUAL* is a 21-item scale that was designed to measure the five dimensions of service quality. The scale is frequently adapted to the specific context of a particular service, including Internet shopping and online services.
- ▶ **LO 13** ▶ Loyalty is a customer's willingness to continue patronizing a firm over the long term, preferably on an exclusive basis. Customer loyalty extends beyond behavior and includes preference, liking, and future intentions. The term *customer engagement* is increasingly used to refer to non-repurchase-related loyalty behaviors such as recommending a firm to friends and associates, helping other customers, providing feedback, and writing reviews. Loyalty is an important outcome of satisfied customers.

Endnotes

1. Adapted and updated from Christopher Lovelock and Lauren Wright, *Principles of Services Marketing and Management*, 2nd edition (Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 2001).
2. Valarie A. Zeithaml, "How Consumer Evaluation Processes Differ between Goods and Services," in J. A. Donnelly and W. R. George (eds.), *Marketing of Services* (Chicago: American Marketing Association, 1981), pp. 186–190.
3. Valarie A. Zeithaml, Leonard L. Berry, and A. Parasuraman, "The Behavioral Consequences of Service Quality," *Journal of Marketing* 60 (April 1996): 31–46; R. Kenneth Teas and Thomas E. DeCarlo, "An Examination and Extension of the Zone-of-Tolerance Model: A Comparison to Performance-Based Models on Perceived Quality," *Journal of Service Research* 6(3) (2004): 272–286.
4. Cathy Johnson and Brian P. Mathews, "The Influence of Experience on Service Expectations," *International Journal of Service Industry Management* 8(4) (1997): 46–61.
5. Robert Johnston, "The Zone of Tolerance: Exploring the Relationship between Service Transactions and Satisfaction with the Overall Service," *International Journal of Service Industry Management* 6(5) (1995): 46–61.
6. From Richard Normann, "Service Management: Strategy and Leadership in Service Business." 2nd edition (John Wiley & Sons, 1991).
7. From Jan Carlzon, "Moments of Truth" (Ballinger Publishing Company, 1987).
8. For an overview of the likely role of AI and robotics in service delivery, see Jochen Wirtz, Paul Patterson, Werner Kunz, Thorsten Gruber, Vinh Nhat Lu, Stefanie Paluch, and Antje Martins, "Brave New World: Service Robots in the Frontline," *Journal of Service Management* 29(5) (2018): 907–931; M. Čaić, D. Mahr, and G. Odekerken-Schröder, "Value of Social Robots in Services: Social Cognition Perspective," *Journal of Services Marketing* 33(4) (2019): 463–478; M. Čaić, G. Odekerken-Schröder, and D. Mahr, "Service Robots: Value Co-creation and Co-destruction in Elderly Care Networks," *Journal of Service Management* 29(2) (2018): 178–205; Emanuel de Bellis and Gita Venkataramani Johar, "Autonomous Shopping Systems: Identifying and Overcoming Barriers to Consumer Adoptions," *Journal of Retailing* 96(1) (2020): 74–87.
9. Pierre Eiglier and Eric Langeard were the first to conceptualize the service business as a system that integrates marketing, operations, and customers, and they coined the term servuction system; see Pierre Eiglier and Eric Langeard, "Services as Systems: Marketing Implications," in Pierre Eiglier, Eric Langeard, Christopher H. Lovelock, John E. G. Bateson, and Robert F. Young (eds.), *Marketing Consumer Services: New Insights* (Cambridge, MA: Marketing Science Institute, Report 77–115, November 1977), pp. 83–103; Eric Langeard, John E. Bateson, Christopher H. Lovelock, and Pierre Eiglier, *Services Marketing: New Insights from Consumers and Managers* (Marketing Science Institute, Report # 81–104, August 1981).
10. Adapted and expanded from an original concept by Eric Langeard and Pierre Eiglier, "Services as Systems: Marketing Implications," in Pierre Eiglier, Eric Langeard, Christopher H. Lovelock, John E. G. Bateson, and Robert F. Young (eds.), *Marketing Consumer Services: New Insights* (Cambridge, MA: Marketing Science Institute, Report 77–115, November 1977), pp. 83–103; Eric Langeard, John E. Bateson, Christopher H. Lovelock, and Pierre Eiglier, *Services Marketing: New Insights from Consumers and Managers* (Marketing Science Institute, Report # 81–104, August 1981).
11. Richard B. Chase, "Where Does the Customer Fit in a Service Organization?" *Harvard Business Review* 56 (November–December 1978): 137–142; Stephen J. Grove, Raymond P. Fisk, and Joby John, "Services as Theater: Guidelines and Implications," in Teresa A. Schwartz and Dawn Iacobucci (eds.), *Handbook of Services Marketing and Management* (Thousand Oaks, CA: Sage, 2000), pp. 21–36.
12. Stephen J. Grove, Raymond P. Fisk, and Joby John, "Services as Theater: Guidelines and Implications," in Teresa A. Schwartz and Dawn Iacobucci (eds.), *Handbook of Services Marketing and Management* (Thousand Oaks, CA: Sage, 2000), pp. 21–36; Steve Baron, Kim Harris, and Richard Harris, "Retail Theater: The 'Intended Effect' of the Performance," *Journal of Service Research* 4 (May 2003): 316–332; Richard Harris, Kim Harris, and Steve Baron, "Theatrical Service Experiences: Dramatic Script Development with Employees," *International Journal of Service Industry Management* 14(2) (2003): 184–199.
13. Stephen J. Grove and Raymond P. Fisk, "The Dramaturgy of Services Exchange: An Analytical Framework for Services Marketing," in L. L. Berry, G. L. Shostack, and G. D. Upah (eds.), *Emerging Perspectives on Services Marketing* (Chicago, IL: The American Marketing Association, 1983), pp. 45–49.
14. Michael R. Solomon, Carol Suprenant, John A. Czepiel, and Evelyn G. Gutman, "A Role Theory Perspective on Dyadic Interactions: The Service Encounter," *Journal of Marketing* 49 (Winter 1985): 99–111.
15. Richard Harris, Kim Harris, and Steve Baron, "Theatrical Service Experiences: Dramatic Script Development with Employees," *International Journal of Service Industry Management* 14(2) (2003): 184–199.
16. Parts of this section were adapted from K. Douglas Hoffman and John E. G. Bateson, *Services Marketing: Concepts, Strategies, & Cases*, 4th edition. (Mason, USA: South-Western Cengage Learning, 2011), pp. 100–101.
17. Michael K. Hui and John E. G. Bateson, "Perceived Control and the Effects of Crowding and Consumer Choice on the Service Experience," *Journal of Consumer Research* 18(2) (1991): 174–184; Michael K. Hui and Roy Toffoli, "Perceived Control and Consumer Attribution for the Service Encounter," *Journal of Applied Psychology* 32(9) (2006): 1825–1844. Recent research highlights the importance of perceived control during service failure situations in which customers are "trapped"; see Sabine Fliess and Maarten Volkers, "Trapped in a Service Encounter: Exploring Lock-in and Its Effect on Well-Being and Coping Responses during Service Encounters," *Journal of Service Management* 31(1) (2020): 79–114.
18. Richard B. Chase and Sriram Dasu, "Experience Psychology—A Proposed New Subfield of Service Management," *Journal of Service Management* 25(5) (2014): 574–577.
19. For an excellent and comprehensive review of the extant literature on customer satisfaction and its outcomes see: Richard L. Oliver, *Satisfaction: A Behavioral Perspective on the Consumer*, 2nd edition (New York: Armonk, M.E. Sharpe, 2010).
20. Richard L. Oliver, "A Cognitive Model of the Antecedents and Consequences of Satisfaction Decisions," *Journal of Marketing Research* 17 (November 1980): 460–469; Eugene W. Anderson and Mary W. Sullivan, "The Antecedents and Consequences of Customer Satisfaction for Firms," *Marketing Science* 12 (Spring 1993): 125–143.
21. Christian Grönroos, *Service Management and Marketing*, 3rd edition (Chichester, NY: Wiley, 2007).
22. William Boulding, Ajay Kalia, Richard Staelin, and Valarie A. Zeithaml, "A Dynamic Process Model of Service Quality: From Expectations to Behavioral Intentions," *Journal of Marketing Research* 30(1) (1993): 7–27; A. Palmer and M. O'Neill, "The Effects of Perceptual Processes on the Measurement of Service Quality," *Journal of Services Marketing* 17(3) (2003): 254–274.
23. Valarie A. Zeithaml, A. Parasuraman, and Leonard L. Berry, *Delivering Quality Service* (New York: The Free Press, 1990). See also Valarie A. Zeithaml, Mary Jo Bitner, and Dwayne D. Gremler, *Services Marketing: Integrating Customer Focus across the Firm* (New York: McGraw Hill, 2013), pp. 49–105.
24. A. Parasuraman, Valarie A. Zeithaml, and Leonard Berry, "SERVQUAL: A Multiple Item Scale for Measuring Consumer Perceptions of Service Quality," *Journal of Retailing* 64 (1988): 12–40.
25. Ibid.
26. See, for instance, Anne M. Smith, "Measuring Service Quality: Is SERVQUAL Now Redundant?" *Journal of Marketing Management* 11 (Jan/Feb/April 1995): 257–276; Francis Buttle, "SERVQUAL: Review, Critique, Research Agenda," *European Journal of Marketing* 30(1) (1996): 8–32; Terrence H. Witkowski and Mary F. Wolfenbarger, "Comparative Service Quality: German and American Ratings across Service Settings," *Journal of Business Research* 55 (2002): 875–881; Lisa J. Morrison Coulthard, "Measuring Service Quality: A Review and Critique of Research Using SERVQUAL," *International Journal of Market Research* 46 (4) (2004): 479–497.
27. For an excellent overview of cutting-edge knowledge on customer engagement, refer to Linda D. Hollebeck and David E. Sprott (eds.), *Handbook of Research on Customer Engagement* (Cheltenham, UK: Edward Elgar Publishing, 2019).

positioning

SERVICES in COMPETITIVE MARKETS

LEARNING OBJECTIVES (LOs)

By the end of this chapter, the reader should be able to:

- ▶ **LO 1** Understand how customer, competitor, and company analyses (i.e., the **3 Cs**) help to develop a customer-driven services marketing strategy.
- ▶ **LO 2** Know the key elements of a positioning strategy (i.e., segmentation, targeting, and positioning; **STP**) and explain why they are so crucial for service firms.
- ▶ **LO 3** Segment customers on the basis of needs before using other common bases to further identify and profile the segments.
- ▶ **LO 4** Distinguish between important and determinant attributes for segmentation.
- ▶ **LO 5** Use different service levels for segmentation.
- ▶ **LO 6** *Target* service customers using the four focus strategies for competitive advantage.
- ▶ **LO 7** *Position* a service to distinguish it from its competitors.
- ▶ **LO 8** Understand how to use positioning maps to analyze and develop competitive strategy.
- ▶ **LO 9** Know how to apply positioning to digital services and platform business models.
- ▶ **LO 10** Develop an effective positioning strategy.



Tyler Olson/Shutterstock

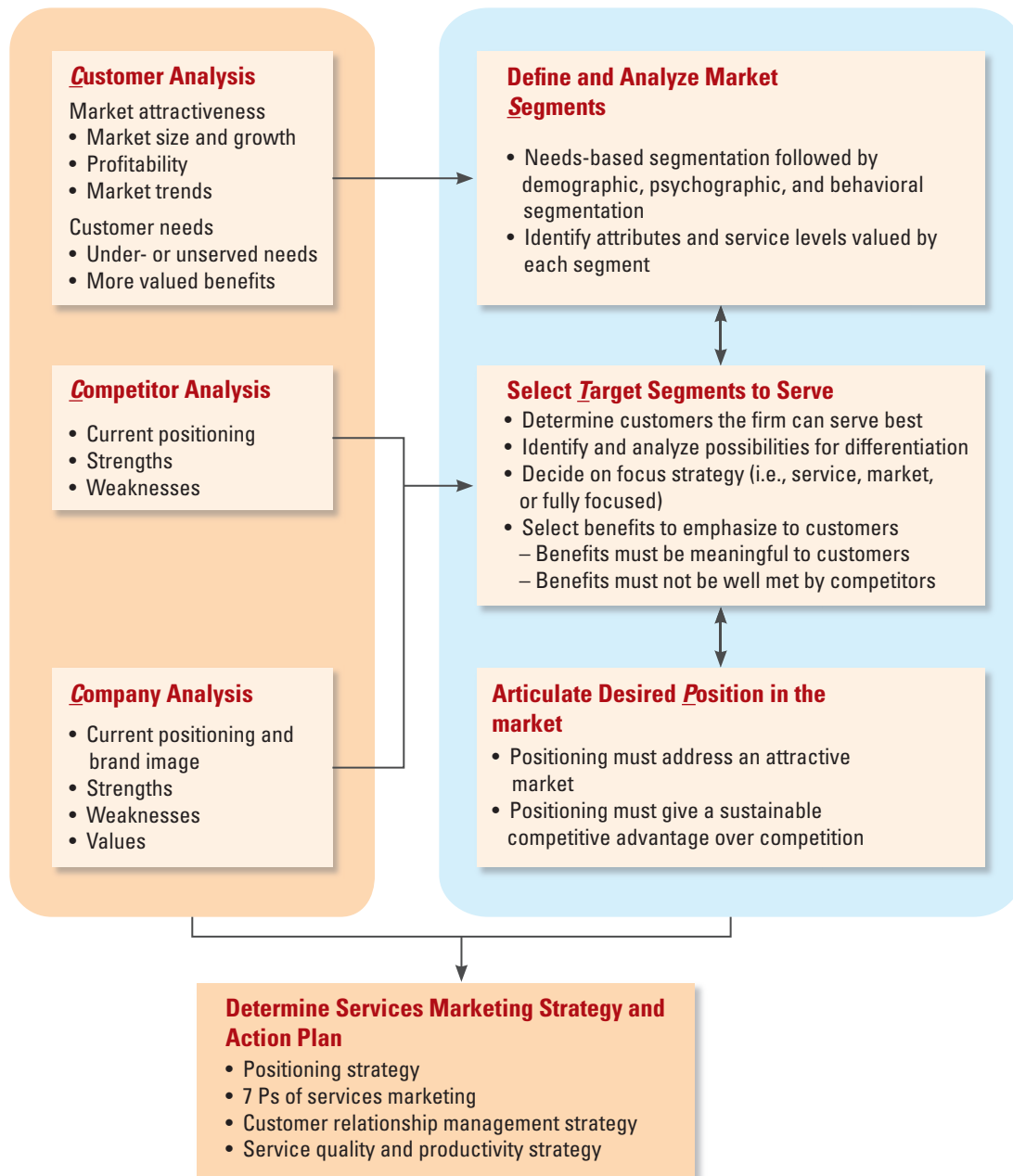


Figure 3.1 Developing a services marketing positioning strategy.

OPENING VIGNETTE

POSITIONING A CHAIN OF CHILD-CARE CENTERS AWAY FROM THE COMPETITION¹

Roger Brown and Linda Mason met at business school following previous experience as management consultants. After graduation, they operated programs for refugee children in Cambodia and ran a “Save the Children” relief program in East Africa. When they returned to the United States, they saw a need for child-care centers with educational environments that would assure parents of their children’s well-being.

Through research, they discovered that the child-care industry in the United States had many weaknesses. It lacked regulation, and there were no barriers to entry. The profit margins and economies of scale were low. The industry was also labor intensive and had no clear brand differentiation. Brown and Mason developed a service concept that would allow them to turn these weaknesses into strengths for their own company, Bright Horizons. Instead of marketing their services directly to parents—a one-customer-at-a-time sale—Bright Horizons formed partnerships with companies seeking to create on-site day-care centers for employees with small children. The advantages included

- ▶ A powerful, low-cost marketing channel
- ▶ A partner who would supply the funds to build and equip the center and would therefore want to help Bright Horizons achieve its goal of delivering high-quality care
- ▶ Benefits for parents, who would be attracted to a Bright Horizons center (rather than competing alternatives) because of its nearness to their own workplace, thus lowering travel time and offering greater peace of mind

Bright Horizons offered a high pay and benefits package to attract the best staff so that they could provide quality service, an aspect that was lacking in many of the other providers. Most traditional approaches to child care either did not have a proper teaching plan or had strict, cookie-cutter lesson plans. Bright Horizons developed a flexible teaching plan called “World at Their Fingertips.” Although it had a course outline, it gave teachers control over daily lesson plans.

Bright Horizons sought accreditation for its centers from the National Association for the Education of Young Children (NAEYC) and actively promoted it. Its emphasis on quality allowed it to meet or exceed the highest local and state government licensing standards. As a result, lack of regulation became an opportunity rather than a threat for Bright Horizons and gave it a competitive edge.

With the support and help of its clients, which included many hi-tech firms, Bright Horizons developed several innovative technologies. These included videos of its classrooms that could be streamed to the parents’ smartphones; posted artwork; menus, calendars, and student assessments; as well as online student assessment capabilities. Its smartphone app allows parents to manage their schedule on the go, communicate their availability, schedule assignments, and simplify communication with the child-care center. All of these served to differentiate Bright Horizons and helped it to stay ahead of the competition.

Bright Horizons sees labor as a competitive advantage. It seeks to recruit and retain the best people. In 2020, it was listed for the nineteenth time as one of the “100 Best Companies to Work for in America” by *Fortune* magazine. By then, Bright Horizons was the only child-care organization on the Fortune 500 list, with over 30,000 employees globally (ten times that of its nearest competitor), and it was operating for more than 1,000 clients in the United States, Canada, and Europe. These include the world’s leading corporations, hospitals, universities, and government offices. Clients want to partner with Bright Horizons because they know they can trust the staff.



Sharomka/Shutterstock

CHAPTER SUMMARY

LO 1 ▶ Developing an effective positioning strategy links *customer*, *competitor*, and *company analysis*, often called the *3 Cs*.

- o *Consumer analysis* looks at the market attractiveness (e.g., market size and growth, and trends) and customer needs (e.g., desired service levels, level of contact, delivery channels, time of consumption, and price sensitivity).
- o *Competitor analysis* examines the competitors' current positioning, strengths, and weaknesses to spot opportunities for the firm.
- o *Company analysis* focuses on a firm's brand positioning and image, its strengths and weaknesses, and how its values shape the way it does business.

LO 2 ▶ The key elements of developing a customer-driven services marketing strategy are *segmentation*, *targeting*, and *positioning*, commonly referred to as *STP*.

LO 3 ▶ *Segmentation* is the division of a market into groups. Those customers within the same segment share common service-related needs. Segmentation is often based primarily on customer needs. This enables the firm to focus on what customers truly want and what drives their purchase decisions. Subsequently, demographic, psychographic, and behavioral variables can be used to further define and describe key segments.

LO 4 ▶ Understanding the difference between important and determinant attributes for consumer choice is crucial for customer segmentation.

- o *Important attributes* are important to the consumer, but they may not be important for the actual buying decision (e.g., safety is important, but all airlines considered by a traveler are seen as safe). If that is the case, such an attribute should not be used as a basis for segmentation.
- o *Determinant attributes* are often further down on the list of service characteristics important to customers. However, they are attributes on the basis of which customers see significant differences between competing alternatives (e.g., convenience of departure times, or quality of in-flight service). Thus, they determine the final purchase decision. Differences among customers regarding determinant attributes are therefore crucial for segmentation.

LO 5 ▶ Once the important and determinant attributes are understood, the management needs to

decide which service level different customers prefer on each of the attributes. Service levels are often used to differentiate customer segments according to their willingness to trade off price and service level.

LO 6 ▶ Each company needs to focus its efforts on those customers it can serve best—its *target segment*. Firms must have a competitive advantage on attributes valued by their target segment. There are three focused strategies firms can follow to achieve competitive advantage:

- o *Fully focused*: A firm provides a limited range of services (perhaps only one) to a narrow target segment (e.g., Shouldice Hospital).
- o *Market focused*: A firm concentrates on a narrow market segment but offers a wide range of services to address the many diverse needs of that segment (e.g., Rentokil).
- o *Service focused*: A firm offers a narrow range of services to a fairly broad market (e.g., Lasik eye surgery clinics, Starbucks cafés, and LinkedIn).
- o There is a fourth, the unfocused strategy. However, it is generally not advisable for firms to choose such a strategy as it will require them to spread themselves too thin to remain competitive.

LO 7 ▶ Once we have understood determinant attributes and related service levels of our target segment(s), we can decide how to best position our service in the market. *Positioning* is based on establishing and maintaining a distinctive place in the market for a firm's offerings. The essence of positioning is:


- o A company must establish a position in the minds of its targeted customers.
- o The position should be singular, providing one simple and consistent message.
- o The position must set a company apart from its competitors.
- o A company cannot be all things to all people—it must focus its efforts.

LO 8 ▶ *Positioning maps* are an important tool to help firms develop their positioning strategy. They provide a visual way of summarizing customer perceptions of how different services are performing on determinant attributes compared to the competition. They can help firms to see where they might reposition and even anticipate competitors' actions.

LO 9 ▶ *Digital services and platform business models* (i.e., largely AI-empowered services offered through apps and online platforms) can be positioned using the *3 Cs* and *STP*. Nevertheless, there are important differences:

CHAPTER SUMMARY

- o Digital services tend to have fewer attributes they can position on as these services typically aim to be scalable and do not have (many) service employees, a service environment, or equipment. This means that the number of attributes a digital service can position on is reduced, so the few remaining ones gain in importance. For example, ease of use, convenient onboarding, and an intuitive customer journey become critically important.
- o Many digital services are based on platforms and ecosystems. The way the different players are orchestrated and governed can be a differentiating factor if it enhances value and reduces risk for its users.
- o Network effects can lead to superior service and powerful differentiation. However, this does not apply to all types of platforms, and it is important to differentiate between two types of network effects:
 - Direct network effects mean that the value to users increases as more users join. For example, the value for Facebook, TikTok, and Instagram is enhanced if others join. Here, network size can become an effective competitive barrier.
 - Indirect network effects relate to platforms where the value for users increases when a new user of a different “group” joins the platform. For example, an additional Uber driver generates value for riders and an additional rider generates value for drivers. However, once matching quality does not increase significantly with additional users, these indirect network effects tend not to provide a strong competitive advantage as competitors can also scale to the required level.

 **LO 10** ▶ The outcome of these analyses is the *positioning statement* that articulates the desired position of the firm’s offering in the marketplace. With this understanding, marketers can then develop a specific plan of action that includes its positioning strategy along the 7 Ps of services marketing, its customer relationship management and loyalty strategies, and its service quality and productivity strategies.

Endnotes

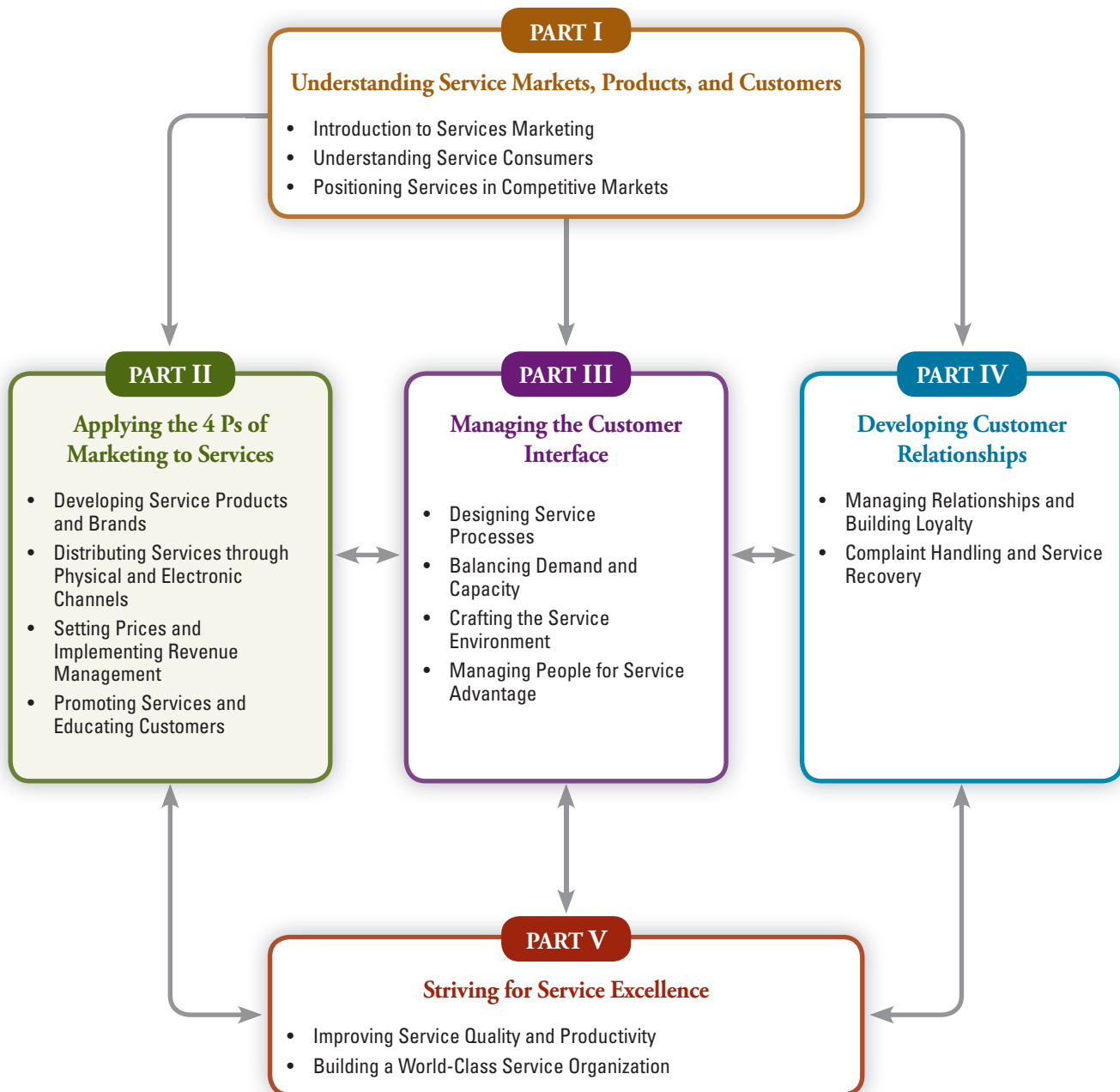
1. Roger Brown, “How We Built a Strong Company in a Weak Industry,” *Harvard Business Review* (February 2001): 51–57; www.brighthorizons.com, accessed January 16, 2022.
2. The jobs-to-be-done framework provides an easy step-by-step approach to market segmentation; Tony Ulwick, *Jobs to Be Done: Theory to Practice* (Idea Bite Press, 2016). A free copy of the book is available at <https://jobs-to-be-done-book.com/>, accessed June 2, 2020. See also Tony Ulwick, “Outcome-Based Market Segmentation Outperforms Milkshake Marketing,” (2018), <https://jobs-to-be-done.com/outcome-based-market-segmentation-outperforms-milkshake-marketing-2eadf3d07b23>, accessed January 16, 2022.
3. Roland Rust and Ming-Hui Huang, “The Service Revolution and the Transformation of Marketing Science,” *Marketing Science* 33(2) (2014): 206–221.
4. Daniel Yankelovich and David Meer, “Rediscovering Marketing Segmentation,” *Harvard Business Review* 84(2) (2006): 122–131.
5. George S. Day, *Market Driven Strategy* (New York: The Free Press, 1990), p. 164.
6. Robert Johnston, “Achieving Focus in Service Organizations,” *The Service Industries Journal* 16 (January 1996): 10–20.
7. The power of a fully focused service strategy is especially apparent for many standard healthcare services; see Jochen Wirtz, “Cost-Effective Service Excellence in Healthcare,” *AMS Review* 9(1–2) (2019): 98–104.
8. Frances Frei and Anne Morriss, *Uncommon Service: How to Win by Putting Customers at the Core of Your Business* (Boston, MA: Harvard Business Review Press, 2012).
9. Jack Trout, *The New Positioning: The Latest on the World’s #1 Business Strategy* (New York: McGraw-Hill, 1997).
10. Nanette Byrnes, “The Little Guys Doing Large Audits,” *BusinessWeek* (August 22/29, 2005): 39.
11. Andrei Hagiu and Simon Rothman, “Network Effects Aren’t Enough,” *Harvard Business Review* 64–71 (April 2016): 66. See also David S. Evans and Richard Schmalensee, *The Matchmakers: The New Economics of Multisided Platforms* (Boston, MA: Harvard Business Review Press, 2016).

For excellent discussions of platform business models, see Tor W. Andreassen, Line Lervik-Olsen, Hannah Snyder, Allard C. R. Van Riel, Jillian Sweeney, and Yves Van Vaerenbergh, “Business Model Innovation and Value-Creation: The Triadic Way,” *Journal of Service Management* 29(5) (2018): 883–906; Allard C.R. Van Riel, Jie J. Zhang, Lee Phillip McGinnis, Mohammad G. Nejad, Milos Bujisic, and Paul A. Phillips, “A Framework for Sustainable Service System Configuration,” *Journal of Service Management* 30(3) (2019): 349–368

For access-based service platforms (e.g., bike- or car-sharing), see *Journal of Service Research* 23(3) (2020): 368–385.
12. Catherine Tucker and Juanjuan Zhang, “Growing Two-sided Networks by Advertising the User Base: A Field Experiment,” *Marketing Science*, 29(5) (2010): 805–814; Benedict G. C. Dellaert, “The Consumer Production Journey: Marketing to Consumers as Co-producers in the Sharing Economy,” *Journal of the Academy of Marketing Science*, 47(2) (2019): 238–254.
13. Arvind Rangaswamy, Nicole Moch, Claudio Felten, Gerrit van Bruggen, Jaap E. Wieringa, and Jochen Wirtz, “The Role of Marketing in Digital Business Platforms,” *Journal of Interactive Marketing* 51 (August 2020): 72–90.
14. Robert Simons, “Choosing the Right Customer: The First Step in a Winning Strategy,” *Harvard Business Review* 92(3) (2014): 49–55; <http://www.linkedin.com/company/linkedin>, accessed January 16, 2022.



THE *ESM* FRAMEWORK



Applying the 4 Ps of Marketing to Services

Part II revisits the 4 Ps of the traditional marketing mix (*Product, Place, Price, and Promotions*). However, the 4 Ps are expanded to take into account the specific characteristics of services that make them different from goods marketing. It consists of the following four chapters:



Chapter 4 Developing Service Products and Brands

Discusses the meaningful service concept that includes both the core and supplementary elements. The supplementary elements both facilitate and enhance the core service offering. This chapter also covers branding and tiered service products and explains how service firms can build brand equity.

Chapter 5 Distributing Services through Physical and Electronic Channels

Examines the time and place elements. Manufacturers usually require physical distribution channels to move their products. Some service businesses, however, are able to use electronic channels to deliver all (or at least some) of their service elements. For the services delivered in real time with customers physically present, speed and convenience of place and time have become important determinants of effective service delivery. This chapter also discussed the role of intermediaries, franchising, and international distribution and market entry.

Chapter 6 Setting Prices and Implementing Revenue Management

Provides an understanding of pricing from both the firm and customer's point of view. For firms, the pricing strategy determines income generation. Service firms need to implement revenue management to maximize the revenue that can be generated from available capacity at any given time. From the customer's perspective, price is a key part of the costs they must incur to obtain the desired benefits. However, the cost to the customer also often includes significant non-monetary costs. This chapter also discusses ethics and fairness in service pricing and how to develop an effective pricing strategy.

Chapter 7 Promoting Services and Educating Customers

Deals with how firms should communicate with their customers about their services through promotion and education. Since customers are co-producers and contribute to how others experience service performances, much communication in services marketing is educational in nature to teach customers how to effectively move through a service process. This chapter covers the service marketing communications funnel and the services marketing communications mix, including communications through online, mobile, and social networks.

developing SERVICE PRODUCTS and BRANDS

LEARNING OBJECTIVES (LOs)

By the end of this chapter, the reader should be able to:

- ▶ **LO 1** Understand what a service product is.
- ▶ **LO 2** Understand the benefits of having well-defined service products.
- ▶ **LO 3** Know the three components of a service product.
- ▶ **LO 4** Be familiar with the Flower of Service model.
- ▶ **LO 5** Know how facilitating supplementary services relate to the core product.
- ▶ **LO 6** Know how enhancing supplementary services relate to the core product.
- ▶ **LO 7** Understand service branding.
- ▶ **LO 8** Know the four brand architecture options at the corporate level.
- ▶ **LO 9** Understand how individual services and experiences can be branded.
- ▶ **LO 10** Understand how branding can be used to tier service products.
- ▶ **LO 11** Discuss how firms can build brand equity.
- ▶ **LO 12** Understand what is required to deliver a branded service experience.
- ▶ **LO 13** List the categories of new service development, ranging from simple style changes to major innovations.
- ▶ **LO 14** Know how design thinking applies to new service design.
- ▶ **LO 15** Describe how firms can achieve success in new service development.



Johner Images/Alamy Stock Photo

LO 1

Understand what a service product is.

UNDERSTANDING SERVICE PRODUCTS

Services are often intangible and poorly defined. This can make them difficult for customers to understand, and as a result, difficult for the firm to position, differentiate, communicate, and sell. What we want are concrete service products rather than something fuzzy that is poorly specified, poorly understood, and poorly communicated.² Developing powerful service products and branding them address these challenges (this process is also called productizing services). This chapter discusses service products and their components, their branding, and new service development. An overview of the structure of this chapter is provided in Figure 4.2.

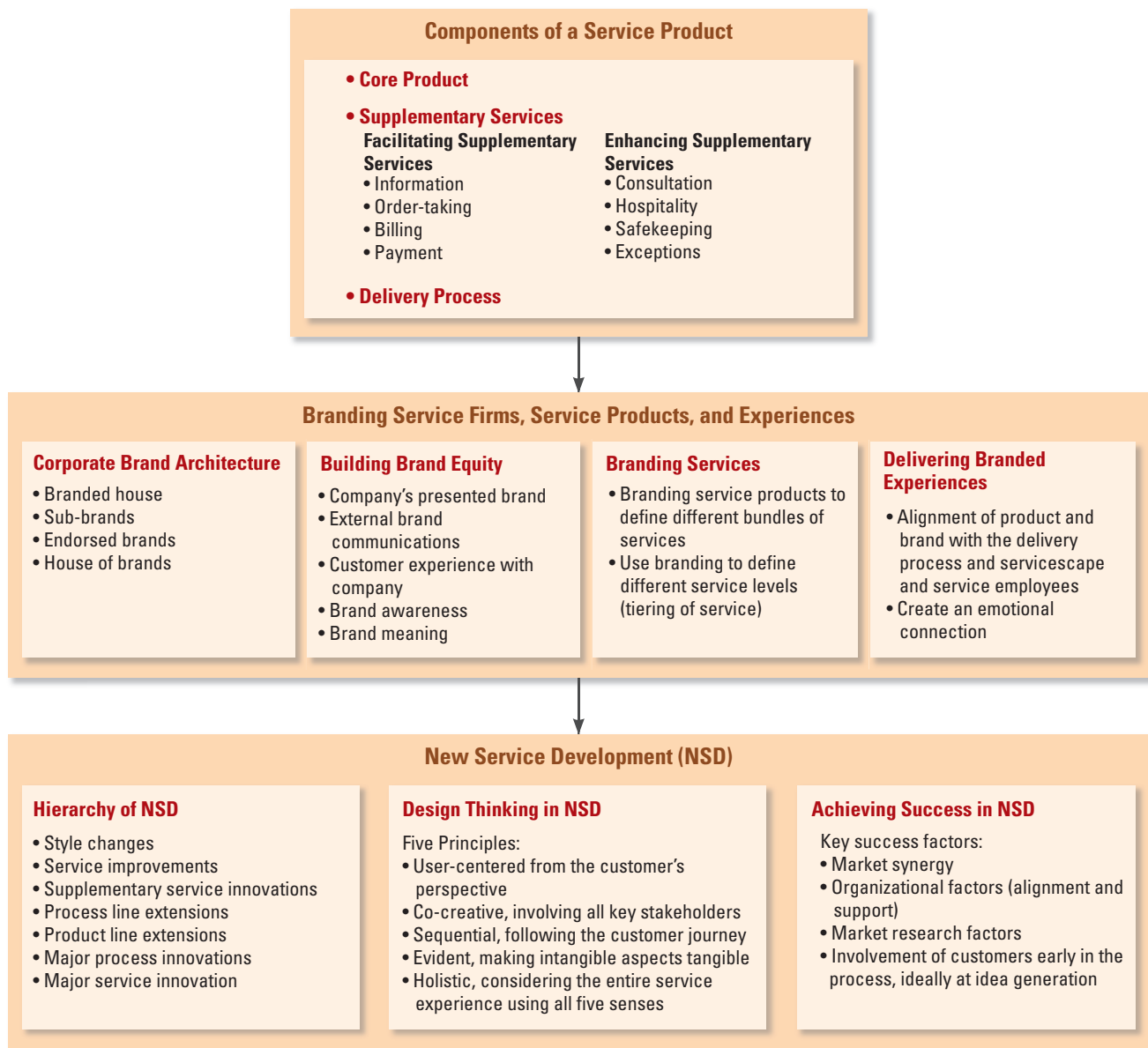


Figure 4.2 Overview of the structure of Chapter 4.

- ▶ *Market research factors.* Detailed and scientifically designed market research studies are conducted early in the development process with a clear idea of the type of information to be obtained. A good definition of the service concept is developed before undertaking field surveys.

Furthermore, researchers have found that in the idea-generation stage, the nature of submitted ideas differed significantly depending on whether they were created by professional service developers or by customers. Customers' ideas were judged to be more original and to have a higher perceived value for customers. However, these ideas were usually harder to convert into commercial services.²⁰ The emergence of online crowdsourcing platforms as innovation partners provides additional opportunities for cost-effective innovation that can lead to new breakthroughs in service development.²¹ We will discuss the role of customer feedback in improving and developing (new) services in greater detail in Chapter 8 on process design and in Chapter 14 on improving service quality and productivity.

CHAPTER SUMMARY

- ▶ **LO 1** ▶ A *service product* is a “bundle of output” that comprises all the elements of the service performance, both physical and intangible, that create value for customers.
- ▶ **LO 2** ▶ Key benefits of having well-defined service products include the following:
 - o Customers can more easily understand the service and its value proposition, including what the service comprises (e.g., what its key elements are), how it is created (e.g., what the main phases and experiences are, and what will happen when), and what value they will receive (e.g., what is delivered, what is the experience and outcome, why it works, and what is so special about it). It also includes the structure and way of purchasing.
 - o Well-designed service products also help employees to understand them and enable them to better explain and sell these products to customers.
- ▶ **LO 3** ▶ A service product consists of three components:
 - o The *core product* delivers the principle benefits and solutions customers seek.
 - o *Supplementary services* facilitate and enhance the core product.
 - o *Delivery processes* determine how the core and supplementary service elements are being delivered to the customer.
- ▶ **LO 4** ▶ The *Flower of Service* consists of two components:
 - o Core product
 - o Supplementary services
- ▶ **LO 5** ▶ The Flower of Service concept categorizes supplementary services into facilitating and enhancing supplementary services.
 - o *Facilitating supplementary services* are needed for service delivery or help in the use of the core product. They include information, order taking, billing, and payment.
- ▶ **LO 6** ▶
 - o *Enhancing supplementary services* add value for the customer. They include consultation, hospitality, safekeeping, and dealing with exceptions.
- ▶ **LO 7** ▶ Strong brands enable customers to better visualize and understand services. *Branding* can be employed at the corporate, product, experience, and service level. A good brand is not only easily recognized but also has meaning for customers by representing a particular way of doing business.
- ▶ **LO 8** ▶ Firms can use four brand architecture options at the corporate level:
 - o *Branded house*: applying a brand to multiple, often unrelated services (e.g., Virgin Group)
 - o *Sub-brands*: using a master brand (often the firm name) with a specific service brand (e.g., ground service of FedEx)
 - o *Endorsed brands*: featuring the corporate brand even while the product brand dominates (e.g., Holiday Inn of Intercontinental Hotel Group)

CHAPTER SUMMARY

- o *House of brands*: promoting individual services under their own brand name without the corporate brand (e.g., KFC of Yum! Brands)
- ▶ **LO 9** ▶ Services can be branded at the individual service, experience, and service levels:
 - o Branding of individual service products helps firms to differentiate one bundle of output from another. Most service firms offer a line of products, with each one having a different combination of service attributes and their respective performance levels. Branding of individual service products is used to increase the tangibility of the service offering and value proposition.
 - o Individual experiences as part of a larger service can be branded and provide differentiation (e.g., LUX*s Cinema Paradiso).
- ▶ **LO 10** ▶ o In many industries, branding is used to differentiate service levels, which is called service tiering. There are some industries where service tiering is common, such as hotels, airlines, and credit cards. B2B service support is often tiered with a “platinum” service offering the highest level of responsiveness and access to more senior technicians.
- ▶ **LO 11** ▶ *Building brand equity* is not just about distinctive brand names and market communications.
 - o A service firm’s presented brand (e.g., through advertising) is more effective in building brand awareness than brand equity.
 - o The customer’s service experience with the brand (i.e., the moments of truth) is ultimately more powerful in building brand equity.
- ▶ **LO 12** ▶ Delivering a branded service experience requires the transformation of a series of service elements and processes into a consistent and recognizable service experience. To build great brands, firms need to align processes, servicescapes, and people with its brand positioning. The remaining Ps of services marketing (price, distribution, and communications) also need to support the positioning.
- ▶ **LO 13** ▶ Firms need to improve and develop new services to maintain a competitive edge. The seven levels in the hierarchy of new service development are
 - o *style changes*: introducing highly visible changes that create excitement but do not typically involve changes in service performance or processes.
 - o *service improvements*: introducing modest changes in the performance of current products.
 - o *supplementary service innovations*: significantly improving or adding new facilitating or enhancing service elements.
 - o *process line extensions*: developing new ways of delivering existing service products, such as creating self-service options and AI-powered delivery.
- o *product line extensions*: adding new services that typically deliver the same core service but are specific to different needs.
- o *major process innovations*: using new processes to deliver current products, such as adding online courses to traditional classroom-delivered lectures.
- o *major service innovations*: developing new core products for markets that have not been previously defined. Major service innovations are relatively rare. More common is the use of new technologies to deliver existing services in new ways, enhance or create new supplementary services, and greatly improve performance on existing ones through process redesign. However, digital startups, quickly improving hardware (from processors and cameras to sensors), and new technologies such as robots, AI, virtual reality, speech processing, and the Internet of Things create opportunities for service innovations that can dramatically improve the customer experience, service quality, and productivity.
- ▶ **LO 14** ▶ Service design thinking is an effective approach to aligning key internal and external stakeholders around the creation of innovative and holistic service experiences. The following five principles are central to service design thinking:
 - o User-centered, from the customer’s perspective
 - o Co-creative, involving all key stakeholders
 - o Sequential, following the customer journey
 - o Evident, making intangible aspects tangible
 - o Holistic, considering the entire service experience using all five senses
- ▶ **LO 15** ▶ Key factors that enhance the chances of success in new service development are
 - o *market synergy*: The new service fits well with the firm’s existing image, expertise, and resources; is better at meeting customers’ needs than competing services; and receives strong support during and after the launch from the firm’s management and employees.
 - o *organizational factors*: There is strong cooperation between the different functional areas in a firm. Employees are aware of the importance of the new services. They understand them and their underlying processes.
 - o *market research*: Customer ideas and research are incorporated at an early stage in the new service design process. There is a clear idea of the type of information to be obtained.

KNOW YOUR SERVICES MARKETING

Review Questions

1. What is a service product?
2. What are the benefits of well-developed service products for customers and frontline employees?
3. Explain what is meant by the core product and its supplementary services.
4. Explain the Flower of Service concept and identify each of its petals. What insights does this concept provide for service marketers?
5. What is the difference between enhancing and facilitating supplementary services? Give examples of each.
6. How is branding used in marketing services? What is the distinction between a corporate brand such as Marriott, the names of its various inn and hotel chains, its packaged solutions for specific occasions (e.g., for marriage celebrations and honeymoons), and its specific features (e.g., Westin's Heavenly Bed)?
7. What is meant by using brands to tier service levels?
8. How can service firms build brand equity?
9. What are the approaches firms can take to innovate, enhance, and create new services?
10. Why do new services often fail? What are the factors associated with the successful new service development?

WORK YOUR SERVICES MARKETING

Application Exercises

1. Select a specific service product you are familiar with and identify its core product and supplementary services. Select a competing service and analyze the differences between the two in terms of the core product and supplementary services.
2. Identify two examples of branding in financial services (e.g., specific types of retail bank accounts or insurance policies) and define their characteristics. How meaningful are these brands likely to be for customers?
3. Select a service firm that you believe is successful and has strong brand equity. Conduct a few interviews to find out how consumers experience its service.
4. Use your findings to identify the factors that helped the service firm to build its strong brand equity.
5. Select a service brand you consider to be outstanding. Explain why you think it is outstanding. Also explore any weaknesses of this brand. You should select an organization you are familiar with.
6. Using a firm you are familiar with, analyze what opportunities it might have to create product line extensions for its current and/or new markets. What impact might these extensions have on its present services?
7. Identify two new service developments that have failed. Analyze the causes for their failure.

Endnotes

1. Joseph A. Michelli, *The Starbucks Experience: 5 Principles for Turning Ordinary into Extraordinary* (New York: McGraw Hill, 2007); www.starbucks.com, accessed January 22, 2022.

2. Jochen Wirtz, Jochen Wirtz, "Viewpoint: Service Products, Development of Service Knowledge and Our Community's Target Audience," *Journal of Services Marketing* 35(3) (2021): 265–270, <https://doi.org/10.1108/JSM-03-2020-0086>.

3. Elina Jaakkola, "Unraveling the Practices of "Productization" in Professional Service Firms," *Scandinavian Journal of Management* 27 (2011): 224.

4. *Ibid.*, p. 226.

5. The "Flower of Service" concept was first introduced in Christopher H. Lovelock, "Cultivating the Flower of Service: New Ways of Looking at Core and Supplementary

Services," in P. Eiglier and E. Langeard (eds.), *Marketing, Operations, and Human Resources: Insights into Services* (Aix-en-Provence, France: IAE, Université d'Aix-Marseille III, 1992), pp. 296–316.

6. From Leonard L. Berry, "Cultivating Service Brand Equity," *Academy of Marketing Science* 28(1) (2000): 128–137, © 1994 Academy of Marketing Science.

7. This section draws on James Devlin, "Brand Architecture in Services: The Example of Retail Financial Services," *Journal of Marketing Management* 19 (2003): 1043–1065; James Devlin and Sally McKechnie, "Consumer Perceptions of Brand Architecture in Financial Services," *European Journal of Marketing* 42(5–6) (2008): 654–666; Elisio Carolino Sousa Santos Junior, "Brand Portfolio Strategy and Brand Architecture: A Comparative Study," *Cogent Business & Management* 5(1) (2018).

8. www.fedex.com, accessed January 22, 2022.
9. www.britishairways.com, accessed January 22, 2022; Easy Voyage, "What You Can Expect from Each Class on British Airways," <https://www.easyvoyage.co.uk/report/british-airways-getting-to-know-the-airline/what-you-can-expect-from-each-class-on-british-airways-1253>, accessed July 2021.
10. Sharon Morrison and Frederick G. Crane, "Building the Service Brand by Creating and Managing an Emotional Brand Experience," *Brand Management* 14(5) (2007): 410–421.
11. http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Space_tourism, accessed July 7, 2021.
12. Amy L. Ostrom, Mary Jo Bitner, Stephen W. Brown, Kevin A. Burkhard, Michael Goul, Vicki Smith-Daniels, Haluk Demirkan, and Elliot Rabinovich, "Moving Forward and Making a Difference: Research Priorities for the Science of Service," *Journal of Service Research* 13(1) (2010): 4–36.
13. Mark Stickdorn and Jakob Schneider, *This Is Service Design Thinking* (Amsterdam: Wiley, 2010), pp. 34–35.
14. Jakob Trischler, Simon J. Pervan, Stephen J. Kelly, and Don Scott, "The Value of Codesign: The Effect of Customer Involvement in Service Design Teams," *Journal of Service Research* 21(1) (2018): 75–100; Chris Storey and Christine Larbig, "Absorbing Customer Knowledge: How Customer Involvement Enables Service Design Success," *Journal of Service Research* 21(1) (2018): 101–118.
15. An excellent integration and synthesis of the service design literature is provided by Eun Yu and Daniela Sangiorgi, "Service Design as an Approach to Implement the Value Cocreation Perspective in New Service Development," *Journal of Service Research*, Vol. 21(1) (2018): 40–58. For an overview and modelling of the service design and innovation literature see David Antons and Christoph F. Breidbach, "Big Data, Big Insights? Advancing Service Innovation and Design with Machine Learning," *Journal of Service Research* 21(1) (2018): 17–39.
16. Jukka Ojasalo and Katri Ojasalo, "Lean Service Innovation," *Service Science* 10(1) (2018): 25–39.
17. Clayton M. Christenson, Scott Cook, and Taddy Hall, "Marketing Malpractice: The Cause and the Cure," *Harvard Business Review* (December 2005): 4–12.
18. H. G. Parsa, John T. Self, David Njite, and Tiffany King, "Why Restaurants Fail," *Cornell Hotel and Restaurant Administration Quarterly* 46 (August 2005): 304–322.
19. Scott Edgett and Steven Parkinson, "The Development of New Financial Services: Identifying Determinants of Success and Failure," *International Journal of Service Industry Management* 5(4) (1994): 24–38; Michael Ottenbacher, Juergen Gnoth, and Peter Jones, "Identifying Determinants of Success in Development of New High-Contact Services," *International Journal of Service Industry Management* 17(4) (2006): 344–363.
20. Peter R. Magnusson, Jonas Matthing, and Per Kristensson, "Managing User Involvement in Service Innovation: Experiments with Innovating End Users," *Journal of Service Research* 6 (November 2003): 111–124; Jonas Matthing, Bodil Sandén, and Bo Edvardsson, "New Service Development: Learning from and with Customers," *International Journal of Service Industry Management* 15(5) (2004): 479–498.
21. Kevin J. Boudreau and Karim R. Lakhani, "Using the Crowd as an Innovation Partner," *Harvard Business Review* 91(4) (2013): 61–69.

distributing SERVICES through PHYSICAL and ELECTRONIC CHANNELS

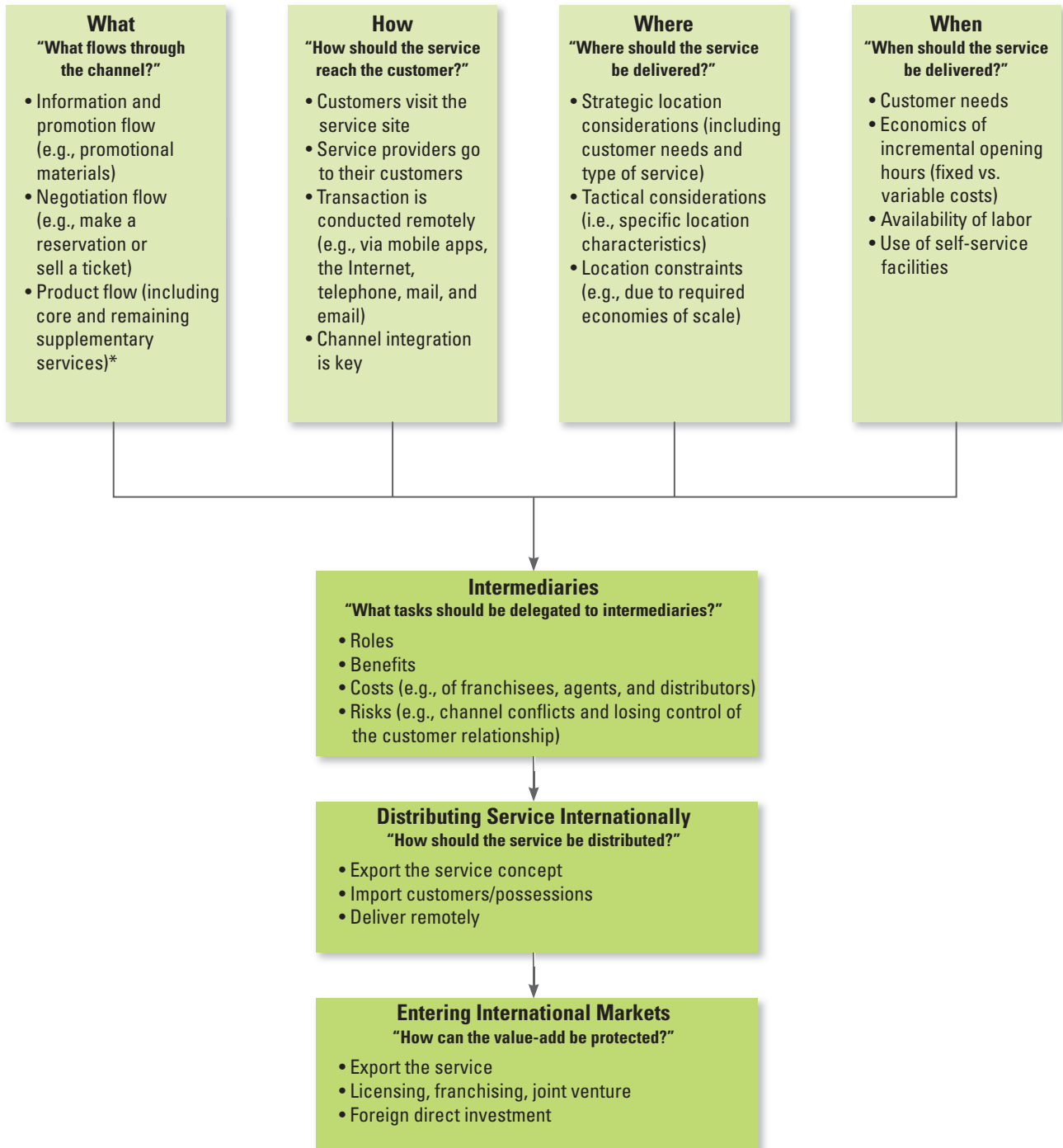
LEARNING OBJECTIVES (LOs)

By the end of this chapter, the reader should be able to:

- ▶ **LO 1** Know the four key questions that form the foundation of any service distribution strategy: What? How? Where? When?
- ▶ **LO 2** Describe the three interrelated flows that show *what* is being distributed.
- ▶ **LO 3** Know *how* services can be distributed using three main options, and understand the importance of distinguishing between the distribution of core and supplementary services.
- ▶ **LO 4** Recognize the issues of delivering services through electronic channels, and discuss the factors that have fueled the growth of service delivery via cyberspace.
- ▶ **LO 5** Understand the determinants of customers' channel preferences.
- ▶ **LO 6** Know the importance of channel integration.
- ▶ **LO 7** Describe the *where* (place) decisions of physical channels, and be familiar with the strategic and tactical location considerations.
- ▶ **LO 8** Describe the *when* (time) decisions of physical channels and the factors that determine extended operating hours.
- ▶ **LO 9** Understand the role, benefits, and costs of using intermediaries in distributing services.
- ▶ **LO 10** Know why franchising is such a common way of delivering services to end users.
- ▶ **LO 11** Understand the challenges of distribution in large domestic markets.
- ▶ **LO 12** Be familiar with the forces that drive service firms to go international.
- ▶ **LO 13** Appreciate the special challenges of distributing services internationally.
- ▶ **LO 14** Explain the determinants of international market entry strategies.



Key questions for designing an effective service distribution strategy:



*Note that information and negotiations are types of supplementary services, but were listed separately here to emphasize their importance in any service distribution strategy.

Figure 5.2 The Flow Model of Service Distribution.

CHAPTER SUMMARY

LO 1 ▶ *What? How? Where? When?* Responses to these four questions form the foundation of any service distribution strategy.

LO 2 ▶ *What is distributed?* The Flow Model of Distribution can be mapped onto the Flower of Service concept and includes the following flows of service distribution:

- o Information and promotion flows (includes the information and potentially the consultation petals)
- o Negotiation flow (includes the order taking and potentially the billing and payment petals as well)
- o Product flow (includes the core product and the remaining petals of the Flower of Service)

A service distribution strategy encompasses all three flows.

LO 3 ▶ *How can services be distributed?* Services can be distributed through three main modes:

- o Customers visit the service site (e.g., for people-processing services such as an MRI scan).
- o Service providers go to their customers (e.g., for tree pruning or private banking services for high net-worth individuals).
- o Service transactions are conducted remotely (i.e., for Skype or for buying travel insurance online).

Some core services require a physical location (e.g., people-processing services), and this severely restricts their distribution. However, information-based core services and many supplementary services can be distributed and delivered remotely.

LO 4 ▶ Developments in telecommunications, online technology, service apps, and sophisticated logistics solutions have spurred innovations in remote service delivery.

- o All information-based core products and supplementary services (i.e., information, consultation, order taking, billing, and payment) and many possession-based services can be delivered remotely.

- o Key drivers of the growth of service delivery via cyberspace are (1) convenience, (2) ease of search, (3) a broader selection, (4) potential for lower prices, and (5) 24/7 service with prompt delivery.

LO 5 ▶ Customer preferences drive channel choice:

- o Customers who are technologically savvy often prefer remote channels due to the greater convenience they offer. Such customers usually have confidence in and knowledge about the service and/or the channel.
- o However, consumers rely more on personal channels when the perceived risk is high and when there are social motives behind the transaction.

LO 6 ▶ Customers are likely to use different service channels with the same service organization (e.g., bank customers use the entire gamut of channels ranging from mobile banking apps and websites to ATMs and bank branches). Thus, channel integration is essential for delivering consistent and seamless service experiences.

LO 7 ▶ *Where* should service be delivered? This is an important decision for services that require physical locations.

- o First, strategic location considerations are involved as the site location is an integral part of the overall service strategy. The location strategy must be consistent with the firm's marketing strategy and the needs and expectations of its target customers.
- o Second, tactical location considerations are used to choose between specific sites. They include population size and characteristics; traffic; convenience of access; competitors in the area; nature of nearby businesses; availability of labor and sites; and rental costs, conditions, and regulation. Geographic information systems (GISs) are frequently used to help firms make specific location decisions.

CHAPTER SUMMARY

- o Locational constraints such as a need for economy of scale (e.g., because of high fixed costs such as in specialized medical facilities) and operational requirements (e.g., airports or distribution centers) limit a firm's location choice.
- o Innovative location strategies can be at the core of new service models. Recent trends include ministores, the sharing of retail space with complementary providers, and the location of services in multi-purpose facilities (e.g., locating clinics in shopping malls).

LO 8 ▶ When should service be delivered?

- o Key factors determining opening hours of a service channel include customer needs and wants and the economics of opening hours (fixed costs of a facility, variable costs of extending opening hours, incremental sales or contribution expected, and potential operational gains achieved by shifting demand from peak periods to extended opening hours).
- o There is now a move toward extended operating hours, with the ultimate goal of 24/7 service every day of the year. This is often achieved through the use of self-service technology.
- o Information-based core and supplementary services can be offered 24/7. Recent technological developments link CRM systems, smartphones, apps, websites, and smart cards to provide increasingly convenient and sophisticated online services.

LO 9 ▶ Service firms frequently use intermediaries to distribute some of the supplementary services. For example, cruise lines still use travel agencies to provide information, take reservations, collect payment, and often bundle complementary services such as air travel.

- o Service organizations may find it cost effective to outsource certain tasks. Intermediaries often add reach and generate incremental sales.
- o However, there are vast cost differences between channels, with a firm's own website

typically costing a fraction of transactions via intermediaries such as Travelocity in the travel industry. A careful cost-benefit analysis is needed, which generally leads strong brands to shift transactions toward their own channels. Brands that lack recognition and reach rely more on intermediaries.

- o Potential channel conflicts have to be mitigated. For example, powerful intermediaries (e.g., Booking.com and Expedia) insist on rate parity, and hotels are not allowed to offer lower rates to guests who book directly from them. Hotels may still encourage guests to book direct by offering extras (e.g., late check-out and loyalty points) that are not extended to guests booking through intermediaries.
- o In addition to cost, ownership of the customer relationship is an important consideration. If intermediaries own the customer relationship, they can easily switch a customer to a new service provider to capture a higher share of the margin.
- o In either case, the challenge for the service firm is to ensure that the overall service experience is seamless and meets the consumer's expectations.

LO 10 ▶ Franchising is often used to distribute even the core service. There are advantages and disadvantages to franchising:

- o It allows fast growth. Franchisees are highly motivated to ensure customer orientation as well as high-quality and cost-effective service operations.
- o Disadvantages of franchising include the firm's loss of control over the delivery system and the customers' service experience. Hence, franchisors often enforce strict quality controls over all aspects of the operation.

LO 11 ▶ Large domestic markets (e.g., the United States, China, and India) are less homogeneous than national stereotypes suggest. Careful market

CHAPTER SUMMARY

segmentation, focusing on specific segments, and balancing standardization and adaptation strategies enhance a firm's chances of succeeding in developing large national service penetration.

- ▶ **LO 12** ▶ Five important forces that drive service firms to go international are
 - o market drivers (e.g., customers expect a global presence)
 - o competitive drivers (e.g., competitors become global and put pressure on domestic firms)
 - o technology drivers (e.g., the Internet allows global distribution and cost arbitrage)
 - o cost drivers (e.g., economies of scale push toward adding markets)
 - o government drivers (e.g., countries joining the World Trade Organization have to open many service sectors to international competition)
- ▶ **LO 13** ▶ Regulation remains a major challenge for many services that have highly regulated markets (such as air travel, health care, and financial services).

New business models in more mundane markets (such as Uber in the taxi market and Airbnb in the accommodation market) also face stiff regulatory hurdles around the world.

- ▶ **LO 14** ▶ The strategy for entering international markets depends on (1) how a firm can control its intellectual property (IP) and its sources of value creation and (2) the degree of customer interaction required for the creation of the service
 - o If the value lies in the IP, then the service can simply be exported directly (as for e-books, music, and software).
 - o If IP control and customer contact requirements are moderate, then licensing, franchising, or joint ventures may be used.
 - o If a high degree of interaction is required, and the control of IP is low, then foreign direct investments may be effective. These may include the establishment of branches and subsidiaries as well as mergers and acquisitions.

Endnotes

1. Research on the adoption of self-service technologies includes Matthew L. Meuter, Mary Jo Bitner, Amy L. Ostrom, and Stephen W. Brown, "Choosing among Alternative Service Delivery Modes: An Investigation of Customer Trial of Self-Service Technologies," *Journal of Marketing* 69 (April 2005): 61–83; James M. Curran and Matthew L. Meuter, "Self-Service Technology Adoption: Comparing Three Technologies," *Journal of Services Marketing* 19(2) (2005): 103–113; Jiun-Sheng C. Lin and Pei-ling Hsieh, "The Role of Technology Readiness in Customers' Perception and Adoption of Self-Service Technologies," *International Journal of Service Industry Management* 17(5) (2006): 497–517.
2. The section was based on the following research: Leonard L. Berry, Kathleen Seiders, and Dhruv Grewal, "Understanding Service Convenience," *Journal of Marketing* 66(3) (July 2002): 1–17; Yolando Polo and F. Javier Sese, "Does the Nature of the Interaction Matter? Understanding Customer Channel Choice for Purchases and Communications," *Journal of Service Research* 19(3) (2016): 276–290; Sabine Benoit, Sonja Klose and Andreas Ettinger, "Linking Service Convenience to Satisfaction: Dimensions and Key Motivators," *Journal of Services Marketing* 31(6) (2017): 527–538.
3. Madhumita Banerjee, "Misalignment and Its Influence on Integration Quality in Multichannel Services," *Journal of Service Research* 17(4) (2014): 460–474.
4. Paul F. Nunes and Frank V. Cespedes, "The Customer Has Escaped," *Harvard Business Review* 81(11) (2003): 96–105.
5. Locating a service outlet is in many ways akin to locating a retail facility. A detailed discussion on location in a retail context is provided in Barry Berman and Joel R. Evans, *Retail Management: A Strategic Approach*, 13th ed. (Upper Saddle River, New Jersey: Prentice Hall, 2017). Of particular interest are Chapter 9 ("Trading-Area Analysis") and Chapter 12 ("Site Selection"). Parts of this section were adapted from these two chapters.
6. Michael A. Jones, David L. Mothersbaugh, and Sharon E. Beatty, "The Effects of Locational Convenience on Customer Repurchase Intentions across Service Types," *Journal of Services Marketing* 17(7) (2004): 701–712.
7. Erin Harris, "Inside Starbucks' GIS Strategy," <https://www.retailintinsights.com>, published April 22, 2011; accessed on January 7, 2022.
8. "Health Care in America: Medicine at the Mall," *The Economist*, April 6, 2013: 66.
9. www.easyjet.com/en/cheap-flights and www.southwest.com/flight, accessed July 31, 2020.
10. For a special issue on franchising in services that features the academic thinking on this topic, see Domingo Ribeiro and Gary Akehurst (eds.), Special Double Issue: Franchising in Services, *The Service Industries Journal* 34 (9–10) (2014); and Rajiv P. Dant, Marko Grünhagen and Josef Windsperger (eds.), Special Issue: Franchising and Retailing, *Journal of Retailing* 87(3) (2011).
11. <https://www.franchise.org/faqs/basics/what-is-a-franchise>, accessed January 7, 2022. If you are interested in starting your own business as a franchisee, you should carefully research the franchise industry, the franchise model, and the pros and cons of owning any particular franchise. The International Franchise Association has developed a resource full of tips and information to help you get started. Have a look at their website and at the posted franchising opportunities at www.franchise.org/franchise-opportunities.
12. Melih Madanoglu, Kyuho Lee, and Gary J. Castrogiovanni, "Franchising and Firm Financial Performance among U.S. Restaurants," *Journal of Retailing* 87(3) (2011): 406–417.
13. Scott Shane and Chester Spell, "Factors for New Franchise Success," *Sloan Management Review* 39 (Spring 1998): 43–50.
14. Firdaus Abdullah and Mohd Rashidee Alwi, "Measuring and Managing Franchisee Satisfaction: A Study of Academic Franchising," *Journal of Modelling in Management* 3(2) (2008): 182–199. For more research on factors that affect the success of franchisees, see Markus Blut, Christof Backhaus, Tobias Heussler, David M. Woisetschlager, Heiner Evanschitzky, and Dieter Ahlert, "What to Expect after the Honeymoon: Testing a Lifecycle Theory of Franchise Relationships," *Journal of Retailing* 87(3) (2011): 306–319.
15. Matthew Sveum and Michael Sykuta, "The Effect of Franchising on Establishment Performance in the U.S. Restaurant Industry," *Cornell Hospitality Quarterly* 60(2) (2019): 104–115; Jochen Wirtz, Sven Tuzovic, and Michael Ehret, "Global Business Services: Increasing Specialization and Integration of the World Economy as Drivers of Economic Growth," *Journal of Service Management* 26(4) (2015): 565–587.

setting prices and IMPLEMENTING REVENUE MANAGEMENT

LEARNING OBJECTIVES (LOs)

By the end of this chapter, the reader should be able to:

- ▶ **LO 1** Recognize that effective pricing is central to the financial success of service firms.
- ▶ **LO 2** Outline the foundations of a pricing strategy as represented by the pricing tripod.
- ▶ **LO 3** Define different types of financial costs and explain the limitations of cost-based pricing.
- ▶ **LO 4** Understand the concept of net value and know how gross value can be enhanced through value-based pricing and reduction of related monetary and non-monetary costs.
- ▶ **LO 5** Describe competition-based pricing and situations where service markets are less price-competitive.
- ▶ **LO 6** Define revenue management and describe how it works.
- ▶ **LO 7** Discuss the role of rate fences in effective revenue management.
- ▶ **LO 8** Be familiar with the issues of ethics and consumer concerns related to service pricing.
- ▶ **LO 9** Understand how fairness can be designed into revenue management policies.
- ▶ **LO 10** Discuss the six questions marketers need to answer to design an effective service-pricing strategy.



Nagy-Bagoly Arpad/Shutterstock

Figure 6.1 Dynamic pricing, a strategy to price the same product differently to different customers at various times, has gained popularity in many industries.

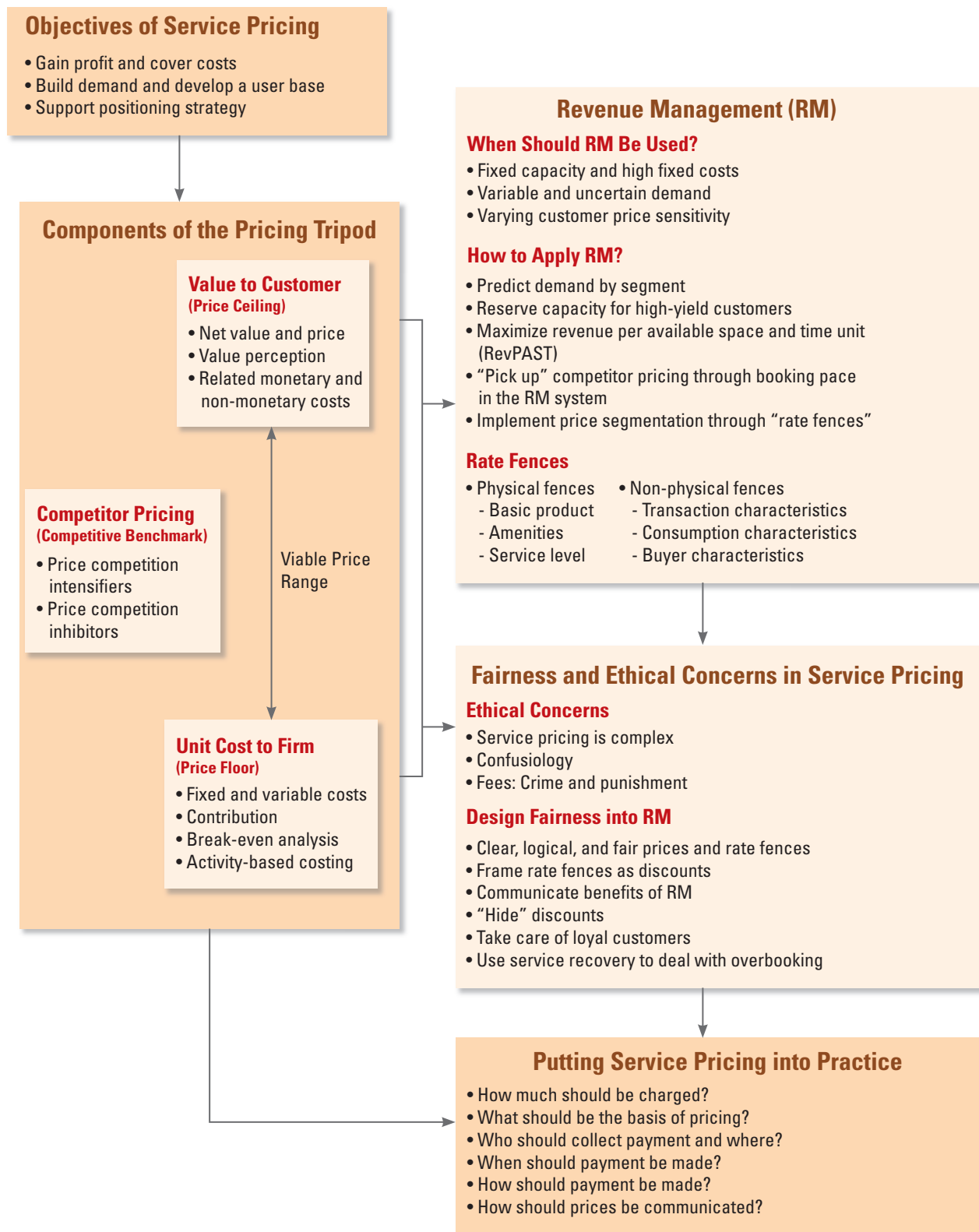



Figure 6.3 Organizing framework for the pricing of services.


CHAPTER SUMMARY

- LO 1** ▶ Effective pricing is central to the financial success of service firms. The key objectives for establishing prices can be to (1) gain profits and cover costs, (2) build demand and develop a user base, and/or (3) support the firm's positioning strategy. Once a firm sets its pricing objectives, it needs to decide on its pricing strategy.
- LO 2** ▶ The foundations of a pricing strategy are the three legs of the pricing tripod:
- o The costs the firm needs to recover set the minimum or floor price.
 - o The customer's perceived value of the offering sets a maximum or ceiling price.
 - o The price charged for competing services determines where, within the floor-to-ceiling range, the price can be set.
- LO 3** ▶ The first leg of the pricing tripod is the cost to the firm.
- o Costing services is often complex. Services frequently have high fixed costs, varying capacity utilization, and large shared infrastructures that make it difficult to establish unit costs.
 - o If services have a large proportion of variable and/or semi-variable costs, cost-accounting approaches work well (e.g., the use of contribution and break-even analysis).
 - o However, activity-based costing (ABC) is often more appropriate for complex services with shared infrastructure.
- LO 4** ▶ The second leg of the pricing tripod is value to the customer.
- o Net value is the sum of all the perceived benefits (gross value) minus the sum of all the perceived costs of a service. Customers will only buy the service if the net value is positive. The net value can be enhanced by increasing value and/or by reducing costs.
 - o Since value is perceived and subjective, it can be enhanced through communication and education to help customers better understand the value they receive.
 - o In addition to the price customers pay for the service, costs include related monetary costs (e.g., the taxi fare to the service location) and non-monetary costs (e.g., time, physical, psychological, and sensory costs) during the search, purchase and service encounter, and post-purchase stages. Firms can enhance net value by reducing these related monetary and non-monetary costs.
- LO 5** ▶ The third leg of the pricing tripod is competition:
- o Price competition can be fierce in markets with relatively similar services. Here, firms need to closely observe what competitors charge and price accordingly.
 - o Price competition intensifies with the (1) number of competitors, (2) number of substituting offers, (3) distribution density of competitor and substitution offers, and (4) amount of surplus capacity in the industry.
 - o Price competition is reduced if one or more of the following applies: (1) Non-price-related costs of using competing alternatives are high; (2) personal relationships are important; and (3) switching costs are high, and service consumption is time and location specific.
- LO 6** ▶ Revenue management (RM) increases revenue for the firm through better use of capacity and reservation of capacity for higher-paying segments. Specifically, revenue management
- o designs products using physical and non-physical rate fences and prices them for different segments according to their specific reservation prices.
 - o sets prices according to predicted demand levels of different customer segments.
 - o works best in service businesses characterized by (1) high fixed costs and perishable inventory, (2) several customer segments with different price elasticities, and (3) variable and uncertain demand.
 - o measures success by revenue per available capacity for a given space and time unit (RevPAST). For example, airlines seek to maximize revenue per available seat kilometer (RevPASK), while hotels try to maximize their revenue per available room night (RevPAR).
- LO 7** ▶ Well-designed rate fences are needed to define "products" for each target segment so that customers who are willing to pay higher prices for a service are unable to take advantage of lower price buckets. Rate fences can be physical and non-physical.
- o Physical fences refer to tangible product differences related to different prices (e.g., seat location in a theater, size of a hotel room, or service level).

CHAPTER SUMMARY


- o Non-physical fences refer to consumption (e.g., having to stay over a weekend at a hotel), transaction (e.g., two weeks' advance booking with cancellation and change penalties), or buyer characteristics (e.g., student and group discounts). The service experience is identical across fence conditions although different prices are charged.

 **LO 8** ▶ Customers often have difficulties understanding service pricing (e.g., RM practices and their many fences and fee schedules). Service firms need to be careful that their pricing does not become so complex and full of hidden fees that customers perceive them as unethical and unfair.

 **LO 9** ▶ The following ways help firms to improve customers' fairness perceptions:

- o Design price schedules and fences that are clear, logical, and fair.
- o Use published prices and frame fences as discounts.

- o Communicate consumer benefits of revenue management.
- o "Hide" discounts through bundling, product design, and targeting.
- o Take care of loyal customers.
- o Use service recovery to deal with overbooking.

 **LO 10** ▶ Service marketers need to consider seven questions to develop a well-thought-out pricing strategy:

1. How much should be charged?
2. What should be the specified basis for pricing?
3. Who should collect payment, and where should payment be made?
4. When should payment be made?
5. How should payment be made?
6. How should prices be communicated to target markets?

Endnotes

1. Joshua Brustein, "Star Pitchers in a Duel? Tickets Will Cost More," *The New York Times*, June 27, 2010; <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/ScoreBig>, accessed on February 10, 2022.
2. This section draws from Robert S. Kaplan and Steven R. Anderson, "Time-Driven Activity-Based Costing," *Harvard Business Review* (November 2004); Thomas H. Stevenson and David W. E. Cabell, "Integrating Transfer Pricing Policy and Activity-Based Costing," *Journal of International Marketing* 10(4) (2002): 77–88.
3. Parts of this section are based on Leonard L. Berry and Manjit S. Yadav, "Capture and Communicate Value in the Pricing of Services," *Sloan Management Review* 37 (Summer 1996): 41–51; Anna S. Mattila and Jochen Wirtz, "The Impact of Knowledge Types on the Consumer Search Process—An Investigation in the Context of Credence Services," *International Journal of Service Industry Management* 13(3) (2002): 214–230.
4. It has been shown that music piracy can be reduced by making the purchase and use of music more convenient. Ironically, the use of digital rights management (DRM), which aims to reduce unauthorized copying and piracy, actually increases piracy, not because of consumers' unwillingness to pay but because of the inconvenience entailed in using DRM-protected files. See Rajiv K. Sinha, Fernando S. Machado, and Collin Sellman, "Don't Think Twice, It's All Right: Music Piracy and Pricing in a DRM-Free Environment," *Journal of Marketing* 74(2) (2010): 40–54.
5. Leonard L. Berry, Kathleen Seiders, and Dhruv Grewal, "Understanding Service Convenience," *Journal of Marketing* 66 (July 2002): 1–17. For an examination of the trade-off between price and effort (i.e., self-service), see Lan Xia and Rajneesh Suri, "Trading Effort for Money: Consumers' Cocreation Motivation and the Price of Service Options," *Journal of Service Research* 17(2) (2014): 229–242.
6. Jochen Wirtz, Ping Xiao, Jeongwen Chiang, and Naresh Malhotra, "Contrasting Switching Intent and Switching Behavior in Contractual Service Settings," *Journal of Retailing* 90(4) (2014): 463–480.
7. Kristina Heinonen, "Reconceptualizing Customer Perceived Value: The Value of Time and Place," *Managing Service Quality* 14(3) (2004): 205–215.
8. For a review of the extant revenue management literature, see Sheryl E. Kimes and Jochen Wirtz, "Revenue Management: Advanced Strategies and Tools to Enhance Firm Profitability," *Foundations and Trends in Marketing* 8(1) (2015): 1–68.

For an excellent case study on implementing RM in restaurants, see Sheryl E. Kimes and Jeannette Ho, "Implementing Revenue Management in Your Restaurants: A Case Study with Fairmont Raffles Hotels International," *Cornell Hospitality Report* 19(5) (2019): 1–13.
9. Saif Benjaafar and Ming Hu, "Operations Management in the Age of the Sharing Economy: What Is Old and What Is New?" *Manufacturing & Service Operations Management* 22(1) (2020): 93–101.
10. Georgios Zervas, Davide Proserpio, and John W. Byers, "The Rise of the Sharing Economy: Estimating the Impact of Airbnb on the Hotel Industry," *Journal of Marketing Research* 54(5) (2017): 687–705.
11. Hermann Simon and Robert J. Dolan, "Price Customization," *Marketing Management* 7 (Fall 1998): 11–17.
12. Lisa E. Bolton, Luk Warlop, and Joseph W. Alba, "Consumer Perceptions of Price (Un)Fairness," *Journal of Consumer Research* 29(4) (2003): 474–491; Lan Xia, Kent B. Monroe, and Jennifer L. Cox, "The Price Is Unfair! A Conceptual Framework of Price Fairness Perceptions," *Journal of Marketing* 68 (October 2004): 1–15; Philipp Leinsle, Dirk Totzek and Jan H. Schumann, "How Price Fairness and Fit Affect Customer Tariff Evaluations," *Journal of Service Management* 29(4) (2018): 735–764.
13. Scott Adams, *The Dilbert Future: Thriving on Business Stupidity in the 21st Century* (New York: Harper Business, 1997), p. 160.
14. Ian Ayres and Barry Nalebuff, "In Praise of Honest Pricing," *Sloan Management Review* 45 (Fall 2003): 24–28.
15. Dean Foust, "Protection Racket? As Overdraft and Other Fees Become Huge Profit Sources for Banks, Critics See Abuses," *Business Week* 5 (February 2005): 68–89.
16. Parts of this section are based on Jochen Wirtz, Sheryl E. Kimes, Jeannette P. T. Ho, and Paul Patterson, "Revenue Management: Resolving Potential Customer Conflicts," *Journal of Revenue and Pricing Management* 2(3) (2003): 216–228; additional sources include Jochen Wirtz and Sheryl E. Kimes, "The Moderating Role of Familiarity in Fairness Perceptions of Revenue Management Pricing," *Journal of Service Research* 9(3) (2007): 229–240; Robin Chark, "Price Fairness in the Era of the Sharing Economy," *Cornell Hospitality Quarterly* 60(3): 200–211; Rafi Mohammed, "A Better Way to Make Deals on Meals," *Harvard Business Review* (January–February 2011): 25.
17. Florian V. Wengenheim and Tomas Bayon, "Behavioral Consequences of Overbooking Service Capacity," *Journal of Marketing* 71(4) (October 2007): 36–47; Amin Nazifi, Katja Gelbrich, Yany Gregoire, Sebastian Koch, Dahlia El-Manstrly, and Jochen Wirtz, "Proactive Handling of Flight Overbooking: How to Reduce Negative eWOM and the Costs of Bumping Customers," *Journal of Service Research* (2020), 24(2) (2021): 206–225.
18. Peter J. Danaher, "Optimal Pricing of New Subscription Services: An Analysis of a Market Experiment," *Marketing Science* 21 (Spring 2002): 119–129; Gilia E. Fruchter and Ram C. Rao, "Optimal Membership Fee and Usage Price Over Time for a Network Service," *Journal of Services Research* 4(1) (2001): 3–14.
19. Fabian Uhrich, Jan H. Schumann, and Florian von Wengenheim, "The Impact of Consumption Goals on Flat-Rate Choice: Can 'Hedonizing' a Service Increase Customers' Propensity to Choose a Flat Rate?" *Journal of Service Research* 16(2) (2012): 216–230.
20. Irene C. L. Ng, David Xing Ding, and Nick Yip, "Outcome-based Contracts as New Business Model: The Role of Partnership and Value-driven Relational Assets," *Industrial Marketing Management* 42(5) (2013): 730–743; Irene C. L. Ng, Roger Maull, and Nick Yip, "Outcome-based Contracts as a Driver for Systems Thinking and Service-Dominant Logic in Service Science: Evidence from the Defence Industry," *European Management Journal* 27(6) (2009): 377–387; Luciano Batista, Simon Davis-Poynter, Irene C. L. Ng, and Roger Maull, "Servitization through Outcome-based Contract—A Systems Perspective from the Defence Industry," *International Journal of Production Economics* 192, Issue C (2017): 133–143.
21. Vineet Kumar, "Making 'Freemium' Work," *Harvard Business Review* 92(5) (2014): 27–29; Björn A. Hüttel, Jan Hendrik Schumann, Martin Mende, Maura L. Scott, and Christian J. Wagner, "How Consumers Assess Free E-Services: The Role of Benefit-Inflation and Cost-Deflation Effects," *Journal of Service Research* 21(3) (2018): 267–283; Zijun (June) Shi, Kaifu Zhang, and Kannan Srinivasan, "Freemium as an Optimal Strategy for Market Dominant Firms," *Marketing Science* 38(1) (2019): 150–169.
22. John Gourville and Dilip Soman, "Pricing and the Psychology of Consumption," *Harvard Business Review* 9 (September 2002): 90–96.
23. See, for example, Lisa Rowan, "Assume Your Medical Bills Are Wrong," *Lifehacker* (2019), <https://twocents.lifehacker.com/assume-your-medical-bills-are-wrong-1839981669>, accessed February 10, 2022.

promoting services and EDUCATING CUSTOMERS

LEARNING OBJECTIVES (LOs)

By the end of this chapter, the reader should be able to:

- ▶ **LO 1** Know the 5 Ws of the Integrated Service Communications Model; i.e., **Who**, **What**, **How**, **Where**, and **When**.
- ▶ **LO 2** Be familiar with the three broad target audiences (i.e., "**Who**") for any service communications program.
- ▶ **LO 3** Understand the most common strategic and tactical service communications objectives ("**What**").
- ▶ **LO 4** Be familiar with the Services Marketing Communications Funnel and the key objectives in that funnel.
- ▶ **LO 5** Know a few important roles that service marketing communications can assume.
- ▶ **LO 6** Understand the challenges of service communications and know how they can be overcome ("**How**").
- ▶ **LO 7** Be familiar with the Services Marketing Communications Mix ("**Where**").
- ▶ **LO 8** Know the communications mix elements of traditional marketing communication channels.
- ▶ **LO 9** Know the role of the Internet, mobile phones, apps, QR codes, and other electronic media in service marketing communications.
- ▶ **LO 10** Know the communications mix elements available via service delivery channels.
- ▶ **LO 11** Know the communications mix elements that originate from outside the firm.
- ▶ **LO 12** Understand when communications should take place ("**When**"), how budgets for service communications programs may be set, and how these programs may be evaluated.
- ▶ **LO 13** Appreciate ethical and consumer-privacy-related issues in service marketing communications.
- ▶ **LO 14** Understand the role of corporate design in communications.
- ▶ **LO 15** Know the importance of Integrated Marketing Communications to delivering a strong brand identity.

The 5 Ws of Service Marketing Communications

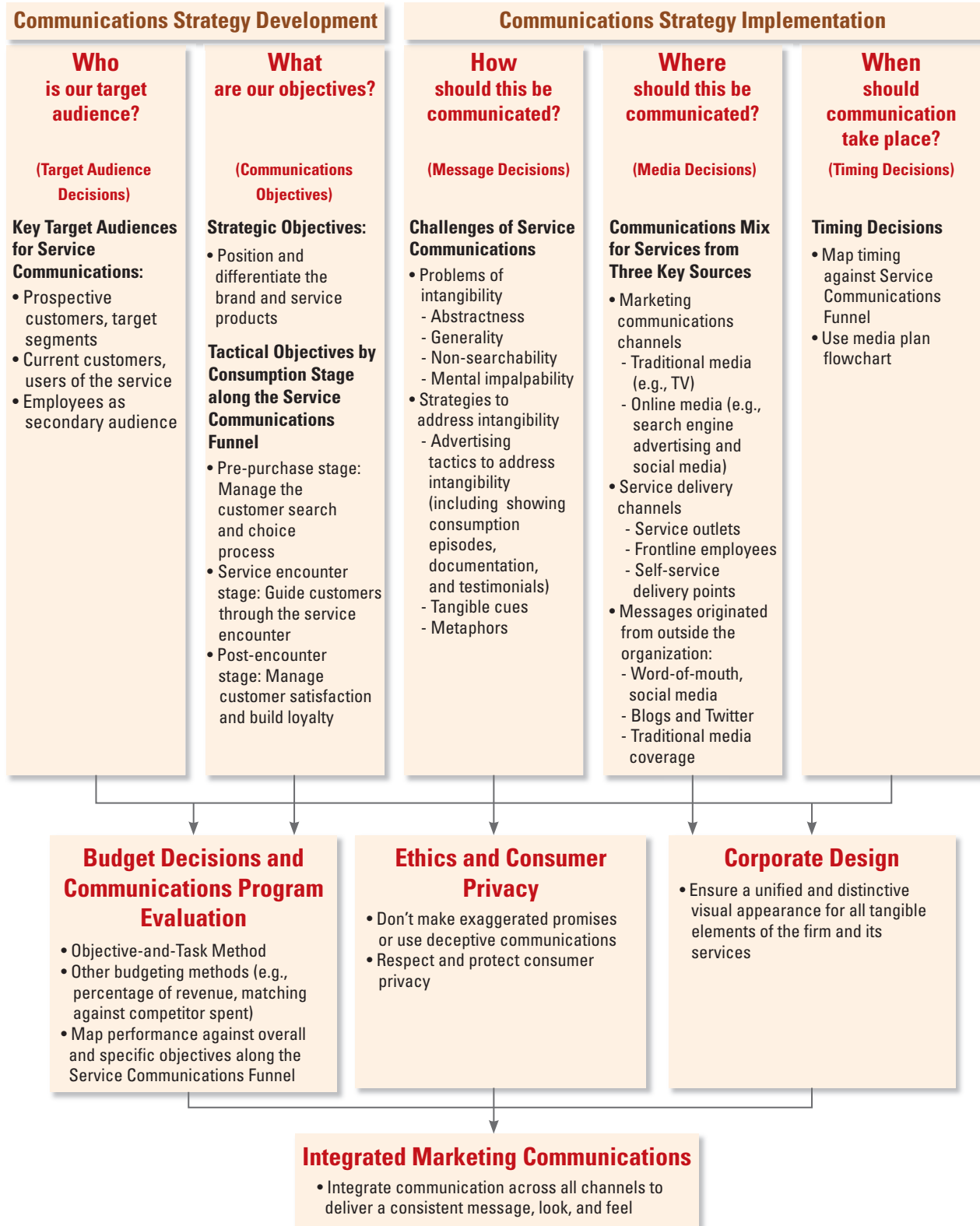


Figure 7.1 Integrated Service Communications Model.

the PR department of public relations; functional specialists of a company's website and its direct marketing and promotions activities; operations of customer service; and human resources of training. The service failure described above is due to lack of effective coordination among these various departments.

With so many channels delivering messages to customers and prospects, it becomes more and more important for firms to adopt the concept of Integrated Marketing Communications (IMC). IMC ties together and reinforces all communications to deliver a strong brand identity. This means that a firm's various media deliver the same messages and have the same look and feel, and the communications from the different media become parts of a single, overall message about the service firm and its products. Firms can achieve this by giving ownership of IMC to a single department (e.g., marketing) or by appointing a marketing communications director to help coordinate all of the firm's market communications.

CHAPTER SUMMARY

LO 1 ▶ Service marketers need to design an effective communications strategy. To do this, they can use the Integrated Service Communications Model as a guiding framework. The model is organized around the 5 Ws:

- o **Who** is our target audience? Are they prospects, users, and/or employees?
- o **What** do we need to communicate and achieve? Do the objectives relate to consumer behavior in the pre-purchase, service encounter, or post-encounter stage?
- o **How** should we communicate this? How can we overcome the challenges caused by the intangibility of services?
- o **Where** should we communicate this? Which media mix should we use?
- o **When** should the communications take place?

LO 2 ▶ There are three broad target audiences (**Who**) of service communications. They are (1) prospects, who can be reached via traditional communications media as in goods marketing; (2) current customers, who can be reached via more cost-effective communication channels such as the firm's service delivery channels (e.g., service employees, branch networks, account statements, and self-service channels); and (3) employees as a secondary audience who can be highly motivated with the right communications messaging.

LO 3 ▶ At the most generic level, marketing communications objectives (**What**) are to inform, educate, persuade, remind, shape behavior, and build relationships.

Communications objectives can be strategic or tactical in nature and are typically an amalgamation of both.

- o *Strategic objectives* include building brand equity, positioning a brand against competition, and re-positioning it.

LO 4 ▶ *Tactical objectives* can be organized according to the *Services Marketing Communications Funnel*, which details a range of potential objectives using the three-stage model of service-consumer behavior as a guiding framework. The funnel illustrates that communications objectives can be highly specific and can address any aspect of service consumption behavior in the (1) pre-purchase stage (e.g., emphasize the importance of attributes the firm outperforms, and reduce perceived risk), (2) service-encounter stage (e.g., guide customers through the service process, encourage proper queuing behavior, and manage performance perceptions), and (3) post-encounter stage (e.g., shape customer satisfaction and encourage referral and loyalty behaviors).

LO 5 ▶ Examples of a few important roles that service marketing communications can assume are:

- o Promote the tangible cues to communicate quality.
- o Add value through communication content (e.g., provide information and consultation as discussed in the Flower of Service model).
- o Facilitate customer involvement in production.
- o Promote the contribution of service personnel.
- o Stimulate and shift demand to match capacity.

CHAPTER SUMMARY

LO 6 ▶ How can services best be communicated? The intangibility of services presents certain challenges for communications. These are

- o *Abstractness*: There is no one-to-one correspondence with a physical object.
- o *Generality*: Items are part of a class of persons, objects, or events and are not specific to the firm's performance.
- o *Non-searchability*: Services cannot be inspected or searched before purchase.
- o *Mental impalpability*: Services are difficult to understand and interpret.

There are a number of ways to overcome the communications problems posed by intangibility.

- o *Abstractness*: Use service consumption episodes and show typical customers experiencing the service.
- o *Generality*: For objective claims, use system documentation showing facts and statistics about the service delivery system and the firm's performance (including past performance statistics, such as the percentage of packages delivered on time). For subjective claims, use service performance episodes where the actual service delivery being performed by service personnel is shown.
- o *Non-searchability*: Use consumption documentation; that is, obtain testimonials from customers who have experienced the service. For services high in credence attributes, use reputation documentation, which shows the awards received or the qualifications of the service provider.
- o *Impalpability*: Use service process episodes by presenting what exactly will happen during the service experience; or case history episodes of what the firm did for a client and how it solved the client's problem; or a service consumption episode showing a customer's experience with a service.

Two additional ways to help overcome the problems of intangibility are

- o emphasize tangible cues such as the employees, facilities, certificates and awards, and customers of the firm.
- o use metaphors to communicate the value proposition. For example, Prudential uses the Rock of Gibraltar as a symbol of corporate strength.

LO 7 ▶ To reach our target audiences and achieve the communications objectives, we can use a variety of communications channels (**Where**):

- o Traditional marketing channels (e.g., advertising, direct marketing, online advertising), apps, and social media.
- o Service delivery channels (e.g., service outlets, front-line employees, service apps, and self-service websites).
- o Messages originating from outside the organization (e.g., word of mouth, social media, blogs, and coverage in traditional media).

LO 8 ▶ The traditional marketing channels include advertising, public relations, direct marketing (including permission marketing), sales promotions, and personal selling. These communication elements are typically used to help companies create a distinctive position in the market and reach prospective customers.

LO 9 ▶ Online communications channels include the firm's websites and online advertising (e.g., banner advertising and search engine advertising and optimization).

- o Developments in technology are driving innovations such as permission marketing and exciting possibilities of highly-targeted communications using online and mobile advertising, apps, social media, and podcasting.

LO 10 ▶ Service firms usually control service delivery channels and point-of-sale environments that offer them cost-effective ways of reaching their current customers (e.g., through its service employees, service outlets, and self-service delivery points).

LO 11 ▶ Some of the most powerful messages about a company and its services originate outside the organization and are not controlled by the marketer. They include traditional word of mouth, online reviews, blogs, Twitter and other social media, and coverage in traditional media.

- o Recommendations from other customers are generally viewed as more credible than firm-initiated communications and are sought by prospects, especially for high-risk purchases.
- o Firms can stimulate word of mouth from their customers through a number of means, such as by creating exciting promotions, developing referral reward programs, referencing customers, and presenting testimonials. All of these are increasingly being shifted to the online environment.

LO 12 ▶ Unlike goods marketing, where much of the communication happens before periods of heavy buying (e.g., before Christmas), service firms typically cannot cater to additional demand during peak periods. Therefore, communications is usually

CHAPTER SUMMARY

connected to the specific objectives and their timing in the Services Marketing Communications Funnel (**When**). Budget decisions and performance management are mapped against these objectives (if the objective-and-task method is used).

- ▶ **LO 13** ▶ When designing their communications strategy, firms need to bear in mind ethical and privacy issues such as failure to fulfill promises or intrusion into people's private lives (e.g., through telemarketing or e-mail campaigns). Firms must protect the privacy and personal data of customers and prospects.

- ▶ **LO 14** ▶ Besides communication media and content, corporate design is key to achieving a unified image in customers' minds. Good corporate design uses a unified and distinctive visual appearance for tangible elements, including all elements of the Services Marketing Communications Mix, retail signage, uniforms, vehicles, equipment, and building interiors.

- ▶ **LO 15** ▶ With so many channels delivering messages to customers and prospects, it becomes crucial for firms to adopt the concept of Integrated Marketing Communications (IMC).

8. What tangible cues could a diving school or a dentistry clinic use to position itself as appealing to upscale customers?
9. Explore the websites of a management consulting firm, an online retailer, and an insurance company. Assess them for ease of navigation, content, and visual design. What, if anything, would you change about each site?
10. Register at Amazon.com and Hallmark.com and analyze their permission-based communications strategy. What are their marketing objectives? Evaluate their permission-based marketing for a specific customer segment of your choice. Mention what is excellent, what is good, and what could be improved.
11. Conduct a Google search for (a) undergraduate business programs and (b) vacation (holiday) resorts. Examine two or three contextual ads triggered by your searches. What are they doing right, and what can be improved?

Endnotes

1. <https://www.facebook.com/kilronancastle>, accessed August 31, 2020; *MavSocial*, “Fun + Engagement = Superb Social Media Campaigns,” <http://mavsocial.com/fun-engagement-superb-social-media-campaigns>, accessed February 15, 2022.
2. Daniel Wentzel, Sven Henkel, and Torsten Tomczak, “Can I Live Up to That Ad? Impact of Implicit Theories of Ability on Service Employees’ Responses to Advertising,” *Journal of Service Research* 13(2) (2010): 137–152.
3. Edward K. Strong, “Theories of Selling,” *Journal of Applied Psychology* 9(1) (1925): 75–86.
4. Robert J. Lavidge and Gary A. Steiner, “A Model for Predictive Measurement of Advertising Effectiveness,” *Journal of Marketing* 25 (October 1961): 59–62.
5. Banwari Mittal, “The Advertising of Services: Meeting the Challenge of Intangibility,” *Journal of Service Research* 2 (August 1999): 98–116; Banwari Mittal and Julie Baker, “Advertising Strategies for Hospitality Services,” *Cornell Hotel and Restaurant Administration Quarterly* 43 (April 2002): 51–63.
6. Donna Legg and Julie Baker, “Advertising Strategies for Service Firms,” in C. Surprenant (ed.), *Add Value to Your Service* (Chicago: American Marketing Association, 1987), pp. 163–168. See also Donna J. Hill, Jeff Blodgett, Robert Baer, and Kirk Wakefield, “An Investigation of Visualization and Documentation Strategies in Service Advertising,” *Journal of Service Research* 7 (November 2004): 155–166; Vai Shiem Leong, Sally Hibbert, and Christine Ennew, “Communicating Value to Enhance Service Visualization,” *Journal of Services Marketing* 32(6) (2018): 645–656.
7. Rajeev Batra and Kevin Lane Keller, “Integrating Marketing Communications: New Findings, New Lessons, and New Ideas,” *Journal of Marketing* 80(6) (2016): 122–145.
8. The media effectiveness estimates are based on the author’s assessment and his discussions with industry experts; this was inspired by Batra and Keller, “Integrating Marketing Communications”: 129.
9. Penelope J. Prenshaw, Stacy E. Kovar, and Kimberly Gladden Burke, “The Impact of Involvement on Satisfaction for New, Nontraditional, Credence-based Service Offerings,” *Journal of Services Marketing* 20(7) (2006): 439–452.
10. Michael Lewis, “Customer Acquisition Promotions and Customer Asset Value,” *Journal of Marketing Research* 43(2) (2006): 195–203.
11. Paul Smith and Dave Chaffey, *eMarketing Excellence* (Oxford, UK: Elsevier Butterworth-Heinemann, 2005), p. 173.
12. Gerard J. Tellis, Deborah J. MacInnis, Seshadri Tirunillai, and Yanwei Zhang, “What Drives Virality (Sharing) of Online Digital Content? The Critical Role of Information, Emotion, and Brand Prominence,” *Journal of Marketing* 83(4) (2019), pp. 1–20.
13. Amin Sayedi, Kinshuk Jerath, and Kannan Srinivasan, “Competitive Poaching in Sponsored Search Advertising and Its Strategic Impact on Traditional Advertising,” *Marketing Science* 33(4) (2014): 586–608.
14. Ron Berman and Zsolt Katona, “The Role of Search Engine Optimization in Search Marketing,” *Marketing Science* 32(4) (2013): 644–651.
15. Roland Rust and Ming-Hui Huang, “The Service Revolution and the Transformation of Marketing Science,” *Marketing Science* 33(2) (2014): 206–221.
16. Yakov Bart, Andrew T. Stephen, and Miklos Sarvary, “Which Products Are Best Suited to Mobile Advertising? A Field Study of Mobile Display Advertising Effects on Consumer Attitudes and Behaviors,” *Journal of Marketing Research* 51 (June 2014): 270–285.
17. Stephanie Rosenbloom, “Apps to Help Navigate Cruise Lines,” *The New York Times* (2015): TR2.
18. V. Kumar and Rohan Mirchandani, “Increasing the ROI of Social Media Marketing,” *Sloan Management Review* 54(1) (2012): 55–61; Roxane Divol, David Edelman, and Hugo Sarrazin, “Demystifying Social Media,” *McKinsey Quarterly* (April 2012).
19. Mary Jo Bitner, “Servicescapes: The Impact of Physical Surroundings on Customers and Employees,” *Journal of Marketing* 56 (April 1992): 57–71.
20. Kathleen Seiders, Andrea Godfrey Flynn, Leonard L. Berry, and Kelly L. Haws, “Motivating Customers to Adhere to Expert Advice in Professional Services: A Medical Service Context,” *Journal of Service Research* 18(1) (2015): 39–58.
21. “Ron Kaufman,” Wikiquote, http://en.wikiquote.org/wiki/Ron_Kaufman, accessed February 15, 2022.
22. Jochen Wirtz and Patricia Chew, “The Effects of Incentives, Deal Proneness, Satisfaction and Tie Strength on Word-of-Mouth Behaviour,” *International Journal of Service Industry Management* 13(2) (2002): 141–162; Tom J. Brown, Thomas E. Barry, Peter A. Dacin, and Richard F. Gunst, “Spreading the Word: Investigating Antecedents of Consumers’ Positive Word-of-Mouth Intentions and Behaviors in a Retailing Context,” *Journal of the Academy of Marketing Science* 33(2) (2005): 123–138; John E. Hogan, Katherine N. Lemon, and Barak Libai, “Quantifying the Ripple: Word-of-Mouth and Advertising Effectiveness,” *Journal of Advertising Research* (September 2004): 271–280; Jonah Berger and Raghuram Iyengar, “Communication

Channels and Word of Mouth: How the Medium Shapes the Message,” *Journal of Consumer Research* 40 (October 2013): 567–579; Jillian Sweeney, Adrian Payne, Pennie Frow, and Dan Liu, “Customer Advocacy: A Distinctive Form of Word of Mouth,” *Journal of Service Research* 23(2) (2020): 139–155.

23. Phillipp Schmitt, Bernd Skiera, and Christophe Van den Bulte, “Referral Programs and Customer Value,” *Journal of Marketing* 75(1) (2011): 46–59; V. Kumar, J. Andrew Petersen, and Robert P. Leone, “Driving Profitability by Encouraging Customer Referrals: Who, When, and How,” *Journal of Marketing* 74(5) (2010): 1–17.

24. Jochen Wirtz, Anouk den Ambtman, Josee Bloemer, Csilla Horváth, B. Ramaseshan, Joris Van De Klundert, Zeynep Gurhan Canli, and Jay Kandampully, “Managing Brands and Customer Engagement in Online Brand Communities,” *Journal of Service Management* 24(3) (2013): 223–244.

25. Gil Appel, Lauren Grewal, Rhonda Hadi, and Andrew T. Stephen, “The Future of Social Media in Marketing,” *Journal of the Academy of Marketing Science* 48(1) (2020): 79–95.

26. BBC, “How Much Does Kylie Jenner Earn on Instagram?” (July 26, 2019), <https://www.bbc.co.uk/newsround/49124484>; accessed August 31, 2020.

27. See the discussion in Gil Appel, Lauren Grewal, Rhonda Hadi, and Andrew T. Stephen, “The Future of Social Media in Marketing,” *Journal of the Academy of Marketing Science* 48(1) (2020): 82–83.

28. Abhishek Borah, Sourindra Banerjee, Yu-Ting Lin, Apurv Jain, and Andreas B. Eisingerich, “Improvised Marketing Interventions in Social Media,” *Journal of Marketing* 84(2) (2020): 69–91.

29. This section draws on Philip Kotler and Gary Armstrong, “Chapter 14: Communicating Customer Value: Integrated Marketing Communications Strategy,”

in *Principles of Marketing*, 15th edition (Upper Saddle River, New Jersey: Pearson Education, 2014), pp. 426–453; William F. Arens, Michael F. Weigold, and Christian Arens, “Marketing and IMC Planning,” *Contemporary Advertising & Integrated Marketing Communications*, 14th edition (New York: McGraw Hill, 2013), pp. 263–267.

30. Louis Fabien, “Making Promises: The Power of Engagement,” *Journal of Services Marketing* 11(3) (1997), pp. 206–214.

31. The European Union’s General Data Protection Regulation (GDPR) can be accessed at <https://gdpr-info.eu/>. If you would like to lodge a complaint with your national Data Protection Authority, see https://edps.europa.eu/data-protection/our-role-supervisor/complaints_en.

Recent research suggests that protecting consumers needs to extend beyond privacy and needs to cover the entire life cycle of data. It ranges from creation of data (e.g., capturing data through cameras and biometric identification and collecting data from wearable devices), to developing variables based on the data (e.g., credit scores or healthiness of lifestyle metric), making decisions based on the variables (e.g., whether to approve a loan, and if yes, at what interest rate), and finally the retirement of these data (e.g., the “right to be forgotten” in the European Union); see Lara Lobschat, Benjamin Müller, Felix Eggers, Laura Brandimarte, Sarah Diefenbach, Mirja Kroschke, and Jochen Wirtz, “Corporate Digital Responsibility,” *Journal of Business Research* 122(January) (2021): 875–888.

32. If you live in the United States and do not want telemarketers to call you on your home or mobile phone, simply register your numbers at the National Do Not Call Registry at <https://www.donotcall.gov>. If you want to reduce unwanted direct mailers, register your email at the Direct Marketing Association’s DMAChoice at <https://dmachoice.thedma.org>. If you want to opt out of targeted online advertising and advertisers tracking your browsing behavior, see AdChoices at <https://youradchoices.com>.

Managing the Customer Interface

Part III focuses on managing the interface between customers and the service organization. It covers the additional 3 Ps (Process, Physical environment, and People) that are unique to services marketing. It consists of the following four chapters:



Chapter 8 Designing Service Processes

Chapter 8 begins with design of an effective service delivery process, specifying how operating and delivery systems link together to create the promised value proposition. Very often, customers are actively involved in service creation, especially if acting as co-creators, and the process becomes their experience.

Chapter 9 Balancing Demand and Capacity

Chapter 9 relates to process management and focuses on the widely fluctuating demand and how to balance the level and timing of customer demand against available productive capacity. Well-managed demand and capacity leads to smooth processes with less waiting time for customers. Marketing strategies for managing demand involve smoothing demand fluctuations and inventorying demand through reservation systems and formalized queuing. Understanding customer motivations in different segments is one of the keys to successful demand management.

Chapter 10 Crafting the Service Environment

Chapter 10 focuses on the physical environment, which is also known as the servicescape. It needs to be engineered to create the right impression and facilitate effective delivery of service processes. The servicescape needs to be managed carefully because it can have a profound impact on customers' impressions, guide their behavior throughout the service process, and provide tangible clues of a firm's service quality and positioning.

Chapter 11 Managing People for Service Advantage

Chapter 11 introduces people, who are a defining element of many services. Many services require direct interaction between customers and contact personnel. The nature of these interactions strongly influences how customers perceive service quality. Hence, service firms devote a significant amount of effort to recruiting, training, and motivating their employees. Satisfied and engaged employees who perform well are often a source of competitive advantage for a firm.

SERVICE PROCESSES

LEARNING OBJECTIVES (LOs)

By the end of this chapter, the reader should be able to:

- ▶ **LO 1** Know the difference between a service experience and a service process.
- ▶ **LO 2** Tell the difference between flowcharting, blueprinting, and customer journey mapping.
- ▶ **LO 3** Develop a blueprint for a service process with all the typical design elements in place.
- ▶ **LO 4** Understand how to use fail-proofing to design fail points out of service processes.
- ▶ **LO 5** Know how to set service standards and performance targets for customer service processes.
- ▶ **LO 6** Appreciate the importance of consumer perceptions and emotions in service process design.
- ▶ **LO 7** Explain the necessity for service process redesign.
- ▶ **LO 8** Understand how service process redesign can help improve both service quality and productivity.
- ▶ **LO 9** Understand the levels of customer participation in service processes.
- ▶ **LO 10** Be familiar with the concept of service customers as “co-creators” and the implications of this perspective.
- ▶ **LO 11** Understand the factors that lead customers to accept or reject new self-service technologies (SSTs) and services delivered by robots and artificial intelligence (AI).
- ▶ **LO 12** Know how to manage customers’ reluctance to change their behaviors in service processes, including the adoption of new technologies.
- ▶ **LO 13** Appreciate the dramatic impact service robots and artificial intelligence will have on customer service processes.
- ▶ **LO 14** Understand the differences between service robots and traditional SST.
- ▶ **LO 15** Know the type of services that can best be delivered by service robots, by service employees, and by service employee-robot teams.



Shutterstock

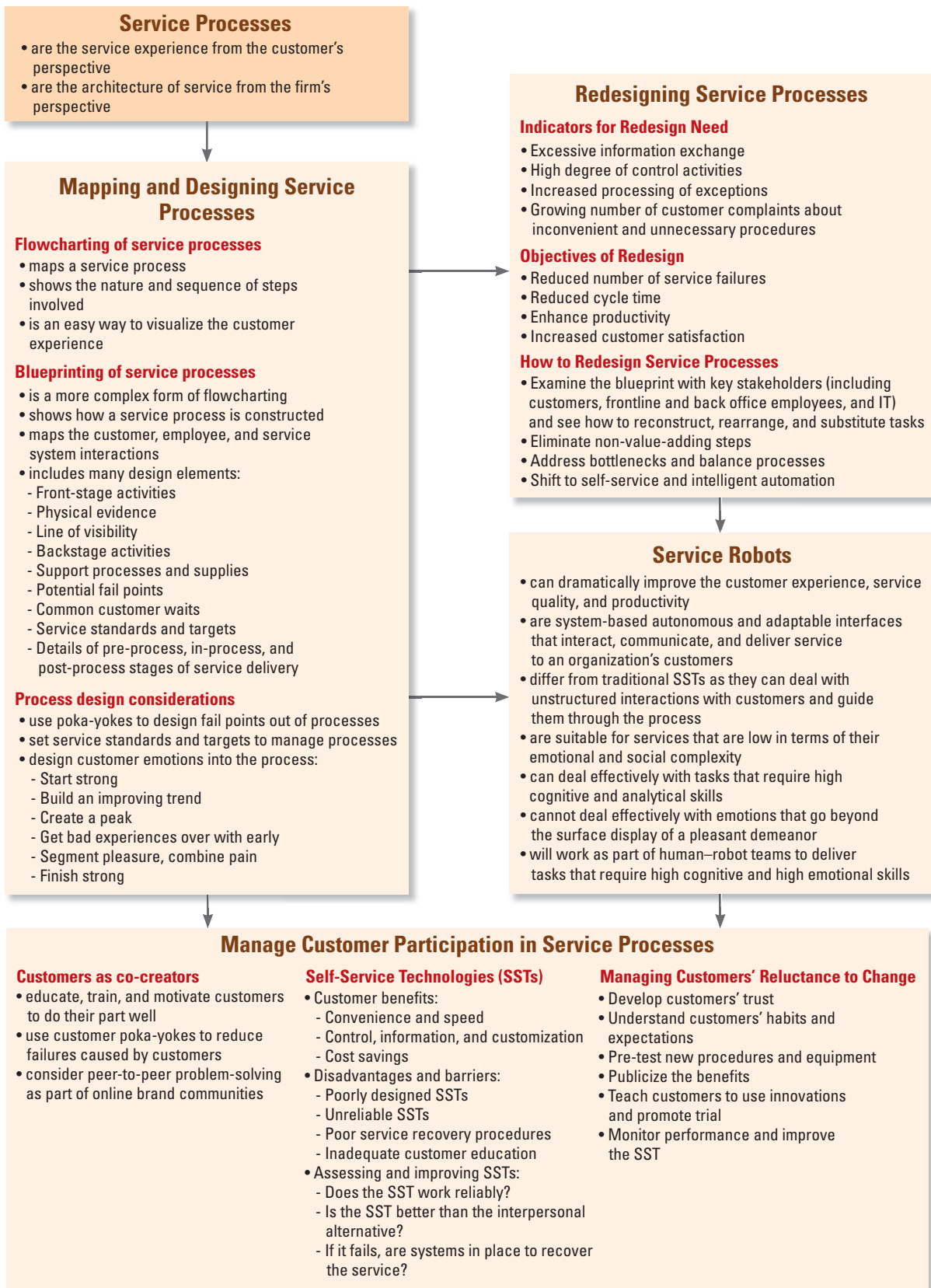


Figure 8.1 Chapter overview: Designing and managing service processes.

CHAPTER SUMMARY

LO 1 ▶ From the customer's perspective, services are experiences. From the organization's perspective, services are the processes that are designed and managed to create the desired experience for customers. Processes are the underlying architecture of services.

LO 2 ▶ Flowcharting is a technique for displaying the nature and sequence of the different steps involved in delivering a service to the customer. It is a simple way to visualize the total customer journey and service experience. Blueprinting is a more complex form of flowcharting that specifies in detail how service processes are constructed, including what is visible to the customer and what goes on in the back office. Blueprints facilitate the detailed design and redesign of customer service processes.

LO 3 ▶ A blueprint typically has the following design elements:

- o *Front-stage activities* that map the overall customer experience, the desired inputs and outputs, and the sequence in which delivery of that output should take place.
- o *Physical evidence* that the customer can see and use to assess service quality.
- o *Line of visibility* that clearly separates what customers experience and see front stage from the back-stage processes customers can't see.
- o *Back-stage activities* that must be performed to support a particular front-stage step.
- o *Support processes* that are typically provided by information systems and supplies that are needed for front- and back-stage activities.
- o *Fail points* at which there is a risk of things going wrong and affecting service quality. Fail points should be designed out of a process (e.g., via the use of poka-yokes), and firms should have back-up plans for failures that are not preventable.
- o Common *customer waits* in the process, including potential points of excessive waits. These should preferably be designed out of the process. If that is not possible, firms can implement strategies to make waits less unpleasant.
- o *Service standards and targets* that reflect customer expectations. These should be established for each activity. They include specific times to be set for the completion of each task and the acceptable wait between two consecutive customer activities.

LO 4 ▶ A good blueprint identifies fail points where things can go wrong. Fail-safe methods, also called poka-yokes, can then be designed to prevent such failures (by both employees and customers) and/

or ensure service recovery. A three-step approach can be used to develop poka-yokes:

- o Collect information on the most common fail points.
- o Identify the root causes of those failures.
- o Create strategies to prevent the failures that have been identified.

LO 5 ▶ Service blueprints help to set service standards that are high enough to satisfy customers. As standards need to be measurable, subjective or intangible service attributes must also be operationalized. This can often be achieved through service process indicators that capture the essence of these attributes or at least approximate them. Once standards have been decided, performance targets can be set.

LO 6 ▶ Service processes need to be designed with emotional intelligence. The following are the key principles involved in the sequencing of services.

- o *Start strong.* The opening scenes of a service drama are particularly important because customers' first impressions can affect their evaluation of quality during the later stages of service delivery.
- o *Build an improving trend.* All things being equal, it is better to start a little lower and build higher than to start a little higher and fall off at the end.
- o *Create a peak.* Customers tend to remember the peak!
- o *Get bad experiences over with early.* If this is done, negative aspects of the experience are less likely to dominate the customer's memory of the entire service encounter.
- o *Segment pleasure, combine pain.* Service processes should extend the feeling of pleasurable experiences by dividing them. Unpleasant experiences should be combined into a single event as far as possible.
- o *Finish strong.* Ending on a high note is an important aspect of every service encounter, even if it is just a cheerful and affirmative "Have a nice day."

LO 7 ▶ Changes in technology, customer needs, and service offerings require customer service processes to be redesigned periodically. Symptoms indicating that a process is not working well include

- o a lot of information exchange (implying that the data available is not useful)
- o a high ratio of checking or control activities to value-adding activities
- o increased processing of exceptions
- o growing numbers of customer complaints about inconvenient and unnecessary procedures

CHAPTER SUMMARY

A tool that helps manage customer emotions is emotionprints, which documents likely customer emotions at each stage of the service process. The objective is to manage the customer experience well.

- ▶ **LO 8** ▶ Service process redesign efforts aim to
 - reduce the number of service failures
 - reduce cycle time
 - improve productivity
 - increase customer satisfaction

Service process redesign involves the reconstruction, rearrangement, or substitution of service processes. These efforts typically include

 - examining the service blueprint with key stakeholders (customers, front-line employees, support staff, and IT teams are invited to review the blueprint and brainstorm for ideas on how to improve the process)
 - eliminating non-value adding steps
 - reducing bottlenecks and balancing process capacity
 - shifting to self-service
 - using smart services, including digitization and service robots
- ▶ **LO 9** ▶ Customer participation is required in many service processes and has to be managed.
- ▶ **LO 10** ▶ Customers are often involved in service processes as co-producers and can therefore be thought of as “service co-creators.” Their performance affects the quality and productivity of output. Therefore, service firms need to educate and train customers so that they have the skills and motivation needed to perform their tasks well.
- ▶ **LO 11** ▶ The ultimate form of customer involvement is self-service, which is increasingly delivered online, via apps and service robots. Most people welcome SSTs and related smart technologies that offer more convenience (i.e., time savings, faster service, 24/7 availability, and more locations); cost savings; and better control, information, and customization. However, poorly designed technology and inadequate education in how to use them can cause customers to reject self-service and automated service. Three basic questions can be used to assess an SST’s potential for success and to improve it:
 - Does the SST work reliably?
 - Is the SST better for customers than other service delivery alternatives?

- Are there systems in place to recover the service if the SST fails?
- ▶ **LO 12** ▶ Increasing the customers’ participation level in a service process or shifting the process entirely to self-service or robot-delivered service requires the firm to change customer behavior. There are six steps to guide this process and reduce customer reluctance to change.
 - Develop customer trust.
 - Understand customers’ habits and expectations.
 - Pre-test new procedures and equipment.
 - Publicize the benefits of changes.
 - Teach customers to use innovations and promote trial.
 - Monitor performance and continue to seek improvements.
- ▶ **LO 13** ▶ Service robots have the potential to bring unprecedented improvements in both service quality and productivity with profound implications for the design and management of customer service processes. Rapidly improving technologies are becoming smarter and more powerful, even as they get smaller, lighter, and cheaper.
- ▶ **LO 14** ▶ Service robots are system-based autonomous and adaptable interfaces that interact and communicate with and deliver services to an organization’s customers. These abilities differentiate service robots from traditional SSTs. Service robots can handle unstructured interactions with customers and can guide them through the process. Across a range of services, customers can interact with service robots much as they do with service employees.
- ▶ **LO 15** ▶ Service robots are not equally suited to all types of services.
 - Service robots are good at delivering simple and repetitive tasks that tend to be low in terms of their emotional/social and cognitive/analytical complexity.
 - Services that require high cognitive and analytical skills, such as accounting and stock trading, can be delivered effectively by service robots.
 - It is difficult for robots to deal with complex and emotionally demanding tasks. These are best left to human service employees, who can respond better to the individual context and show understanding.
 - Tasks that require high cognitive and high emotional skills will increasingly be delivered by human–robot teams.

Endnotes

1. Coleman Associates, website, www.patientvisitredesign.com, accessed April 30, 2015. For further work on redesigning customer service processes in healthcare, see Leonard L. Berry, Katie A. Deming, and Tracy S. Danaher, "Improving Nonclinical and Clinical-Support Services: Lessons from Oncology," *Mayo Clinic Proceedings Innovations Quality & Outcomes* 2(3) (2018): 207–217; Leonard L. Berry, "Service Innovation Is Urgent in Healthcare," *AMS Review* 9(1–2) (2019): 78–92; Jochen Wirtz, Chen Lin, and Gopal Das, "Viewpoint: Cost-Effective Health Care Developments and Research Opportunities in China, India and Singapore," *Journal of Services Marketing*, published online first, <https://doi.org/10.1108/JSM-07-2021-0242>
2. G. Lynn Shostack, "Designing Services That Deliver," *Harvard Business Review* (January–February, 1984), pp. 133–139. For an excellent approach to designing and mapping complex service systems, see Lia Patrício, Raymond P. Fisk, João Falcão e Cunha, and Larry Constantine, "Multilevel Service Design: From Customer Value Constellation to Service Experience Blueprinting," *Journal of Service Research* 14(2) (2011): 180–200.

To analyze, improve and design end-to-end customer journey using bottom-up (data-driven) and top-down judgment-driven approaches, see Alex Rawson, Ewan Duncan, and Conor Jones, "The Truth about Customer Experience: Touchpoints Matter, but It's the Full Journey That Really Counts," *Harvard Business Review* 91(9) (2013): 90–98.
3. Image sources: Wavebreak Media Ltd/123RF; Rui Santos/123RF; Alena Brozova/123RF; Yatomo/123RF; Christos Meimaroglou/123RF; Deklofenak/123RF; Bowie15/123RF; 36clicks/123RF; Imagehit Limited Exclusive Contributor/123RF; Phil Date/123RF; Phil Date/123RF; Pixbox/123RF; Tatjana Romanova/Shutterstock; Rui Santos/123RF
4. David Maister coined the term "OTSU" while teaching at Harvard Business School.
5. For descriptions of how poka-yokes can be used to improve business operations, see Sameer Kumar, Brett Hudson, and Josie Lowry, "Consumer Purchase Process Improvements in E-tailing Operations," *International Journal of Productivity and Performance Management* 59(4) (2010): 388–403.
6. This section is based in part on Richard B. Chase and Douglas M. Stewart, "Make Your Service Fail-Safe," *Sloan Management Review* 35 (Spring 1994): 35–44.
7. This section was adapted from Jochen Wirtz and Monica Tomlin, "Institutionalizing Customer-Driven Learning through Fully Integrated Customer Feedback Systems," *Managing Service Quality* 10(4) (2000): 205–215.
8. "Maya Angelou's 10 Most Memorable Quotes," *The Wall Street Journal*, May 28, 2014; <http://blogs.wsj.com/speakeasy/2014/05/28/maya-angelous-10-most-memorable-quotes>, accessed February 17, 2022.
9. Adapted from Dasu and Chase, *The Customer Service Solution*, pp. 134–135. We added the item "start strong" based on Richard B. Chase and Sriram Dasu, "Experience Psychology: A Proposed New Subfield of Service Management," *Journal of Service Management* 25(5) (2014): 574–577. This book provides an excellent overview of designing service processes with emotional intelligence.
10. Sriram Dasu and Richard B. Chase, "Designing the Soft Side of Customer Service," *MIT Sloan Management Review* 52(1) (2010): 33–39.
11. This section is partially based on Leonard L. Berry and Sandra K. Lampo, "Teaching an Old Service New Tricks: The Promise of Service Redesign," *Journal of Service Research* 2(3) (2000): 265–275.
12. Parts of this section were adapted from Robert Johnston, Graham Clark, and Michael Shulver, *Service Operations Management: Improving Service Delivery*, 4th edition (Essex, United Kingdom: Pearson Education, 2012).
13. Amy Risch Rodie and Susan Schultz Klein, "Customer Participation in Services Production and Delivery," in T. A. Schwartz and D. Iacobucci (eds.), *Handbook of Service Marketing and Management* (Thousand Oaks, CA: Sage Publications, 2000), pp. 111–125; Mekhail Mustak, Elina Jaakkola, Aino Halinen and Valterri Kaartemo, "Customer Participation Management," *Journal of Service Management* 27(3) (2016): 250–275.
14. Stephen L. Vargo and Robert F. Lusch, "Service-Dominant Logic: Continuing the Evolution," *Journal of the Academy of Marketing Science* 36(1) (2008): 1–10.
15. Johanna Gummerus, Michaela Lipkin, Apramey Dube, and Kristina Heinonen, "Technology in Use—Characterizing Customer Self-Service Devices," *Journal of Services Marketing* 33(1) (2019): 44–56. Interestingly, new technologies involve new types of co-creation behaviors, including the use of wearable technology in exchange for advanced services (e.g., in healthcare); see Stefanie Paluch and Sven Tuzovic, "Persuaded Self-Tracking with Wearable Technology: Carrot or Stick?," *Journal of Services Marketing* 33(4) (2019): 436–448.
16. Stephen S. Tax, Mark Colgate, and David E. Bowen, "How to Prevent Customers from Failing," *MIT Sloan Management Review* 47 (Spring 2006): 30–38.
17. Sterling A. Bone, Paul W. Fombelle, Kristal R. Ray, and Katherine N. Lemon, "How Customer Participation in B2B Peer-to-Peer Problem-Solving Communities Influences the Need for Traditional Customer Service," *Journal of Service Research* 18(1) (2015): 23–38.
18. Mary Jo Bitner, Stephen W. Brown, and Matthew L. Meuter, "Technology Infusion in Service Encounters," *Journal of the Academy of Marketing Science* 28(1) (2000): 138–149; Matthew L. Meuter, Mary Jo Bitner, Amy L. Ostrom, and Stephen W. Brown, "Choosing Among Alternative Service Delivery Modes: An Investigation of Customer Trial of Self-Service Technologies," *Journal of Marketing* 69 (April 2005): 61–83; Maria Åkesson, Bo Edvardsson, and Bård Tronvoll, "Customer Experience from a Self-Service System Perspective," *Journal of Service Management* 25(5) (2014): 677–698.
19. Martina Caic, Gaby Odekerken-Schroder, and Dominik Mahr (2018), "Service Robots: Value Co-creation and co-destruction in Elderly Care Networks," *Journal of Service Management*, Vol. 29, No. 2, pp. 178–205; Martina Caic, Dominik Mahr, and Gaby Odekerken-Schröder (2019), "Value of Social Robots in Services: Social Cognition Perspective", *Journal of Services Marketing*, Vol. 33, No. 4, pp. 463–478.
20. Zhen Zhu, Cheryl Nakata, K. Sivakumar, and Dhruv Grewal, "Fix It or Leave It? Customer Recovery from Self-Service Technology Failures," *Journal of Retailing* 89(1) (2013): 15–29.
21. Mary Jo Bitner, "Self-Service Technologies: What Do Customers Expect?," *Marketing Management* 10(1) (Spring 2001): 10–11.
22. Brad Stone, *The Everything Store: Jeff Bezos and the Age of Amazon* (New York: Little, Brown and Company, 2013).
23. Machiel J. Reinders, Pratibha A. Dabholkar, and Ruud T. Frambach, "Consequences of Forcing Consumers to Use Technology-Based Self-Service," *Journal of Service Research* 11(2) (2008): 107–123.
24. Jochen Wirtz, Paul Patterson, Werner Kunz, Thorsten Gruber, Vinh Nhat Lu, Stefanie Paluch, and Antje Martins, "Brave New World: Service Robots in the Frontline," *Journal of Service Management* 29(5) (2018): 909, <https://doi.org/10.1108/JOSM-04-2018-0119>.
25. Adapted from Wirtz et al., "Brave New World: Service Robots in the Frontline."
26. The section draws from Wirtz et al., "Brave New World: Service Robots in the Frontline"; and Jochen Wirtz, "Organizational Ambidexterity: Cost-Effective Service Excellence, Service Robots, and Artificial Intelligence," *Organizational Dynamics* 49(3) (2020).
27. For an examination of the different levels of service robot capabilities, including "feeling intelligence" and emotion, see Ming-Hui Huang and Roland Rust, "Engaged to a Robot? The Role of AI in Service," *Journal of Service Research* 24(1) (2021): 30–41; and Ming-Hui Huang and Roland T. Rust, "Artificial Intelligence in Service," *Journal of Service Research* 21(2) (2018): 155–72.

DEMAND and CAPACITY

LEARNING OBJECTIVES (LOs)

By the end of this chapter, the reader should be able to:

- ▶ **LO 1** Know the different demand–supply situations that fixed capacity firms may face.
- ▶ **LO 2** Describe the building blocks of dealing with the problem of fluctuating demand.
- ▶ **LO 3** Understand what is meant by productive capacity in a service context.
- ▶ **LO 4** Be familiar with the basic ways to manage capacity.
- ▶ **LO 5** Recognize that demand patterns vary by segment, so that segment-specific variations in demand can be predicted.
- ▶ **LO 6** Be familiar with the four basic ways to manage demand.
- ▶ **LO 7** Understand how to use the marketing mix elements of price, product, place, and promotion to smooth out fluctuations in demand.
- ▶ **LO 8** Know how to use waiting lines and queuing systems to inventory demand.
- ▶ **LO 9** Understand how customers perceive waits and how to make waiting less burdensome for them.
- ▶ **LO 10** Know how to use reservation systems to inventory demand.
- ▶ **LO 11** Be familiar with strategic approaches to utilize residual surplus capacity even after all other options of matching demand and capacity have been exhausted.



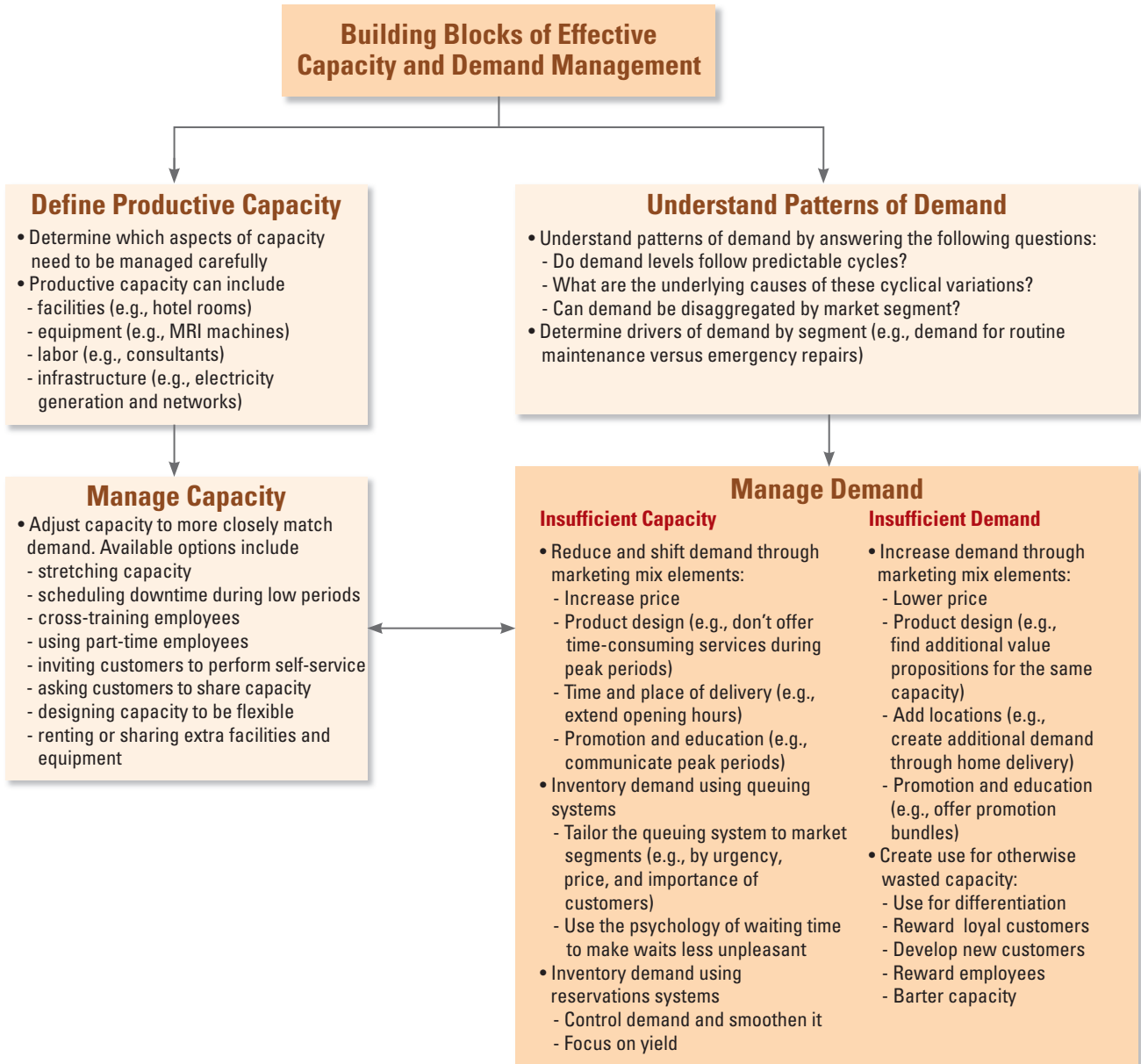


Figure 9.3 Building blocks of effective capacity and demand management.

- ▶ **Reward employees.** In certain industries such as restaurants, beach resorts, or cruise lines, capacity can be used to reward employees and their families to build loyalty. This can improve employee satisfaction and provide employees with an understanding of the service as experienced from the customer's perspective and thereby raising performance.
- ▶ **Barter free capacity.** Service firms often can save costs and increase capacity utilization by bartering capacity with their own suppliers. Among the most widely bartered services are advertising space, airline seats, and hotel rooms.

CHAPTER SUMMARY

- ▶ **LO 1** ▶ At any one time, a firm with limited capacity can face different demand–supply situations:
 - o Excess demand
 - o Demand that exceeds ideal capacity
 - o Well-balanced demand and supply
 - o Excess capacity

When demand and supply are not in balance, firms will have idle capacity during low periods but will have to turn away customers during peak periods. This situation impedes the efficient use of productive assets and erodes profitability. Firms therefore need to try and balance demand and supply through adjusting capacity and/or demand.

- ▶ **LO 2** ▶ The building blocks for effective capacity and demand management are
 - o Define productive capacity.
 - o Use capacity management tools.
 - o Understand demand patterns and drivers by customer segment.
 - o Use demand management tools.

- ▶ **LO 3** ▶ When we refer to managing capacity, we implicitly mean productive capacity. There are several different forms of productive capacity in services:
 - o Facilities for processing customers or goods
 - o Equipment for processing people, possessions, or information
 - o Labor
 - o Infrastructure

- ▶ **LO 4** ▶ *Capacity* can be managed in a number of ways, including *stretching capacity* and *adjusting capacity*.
Stretching capacity means that some capacity is elastic and more people can be served with the

same capacity through crowding (e.g., in a subway car), extending operating hours, or speeding up customer processing times.

Adjusting capacity involves to more closely match demand by

- o scheduling downtime during low periods
- o cross-training employees
- o using part-time employees
- o inviting customers to perform self-service
- o asking customers to share capacity
- o designing capacity to be flexible, and
- o renting or sharing extra facilities and equipment.

- ▶ **LO 5** ▶ To manage *demand* effectively, firms need to understand demand patterns and drivers by market segment. Different segments often exhibit different demand patterns (e.g., routine maintenance versus emergency repairs). Once firms have an understanding of the demand patterns of their market segments, they can use marketing strategies to reshape those patterns.

- ▶ **LO 6** ▶ Demand can be managed in the following four basic ways:
 - o Take no action and leave demand to find its own levels.
 - o Reduce demand during peak periods and increase demand during low periods.
 - o Inventory demand through waiting lines and queuing systems.
 - o Inventory demand through reservation systems.

- ▶ **LO 7** ▶ The following marketing mix elements can be used to help smooth out fluctuations in demand:
 - o Use price and non-monetary customer costs to manage demand.

CHAPTER SUMMARY

- o Change product elements to attract different segments at different times.
- o Modify the place and time of delivery (e.g., through extended opening hours).
- o Promotion and education (e.g., “mail early for Christmas”).

LO 8 ▶ *Waiting line and queuing systems* help firms inventory demand over short periods of time. There are different types of queues with their respective advantages and applications. Queuing systems include single line with single stage–single line with sequential stages, parallel lines to multiple servers, single line to multiple servers, designated lines, taking a number, and wait list.

Not all queuing systems are organized on a “first-come, first-served” basis. Rather, good systems often segment waiting customers by

- o urgency of the job (e.g., hospital emergency units)
- o duration of the service transaction (e.g., express lanes)
- o premium service based on a premium price (e.g., first-class check-in counters)
- o importance of the customer (e.g., frequent travelers get priority waitlisting)

LO 9 ▶ Customers don’t like wasting their time waiting. Firms need to understand the *psychology of waiting* and take active steps to make waiting less frustrating:

- o Keep customers occupied or entertained while waiting
- o Minimize pre- and post-process waits
- o Avoid perceptions of unfair waits
- o Inform customers how long the wait is likely to be

- o Provide customers with an explanation of why they have to wait

LO 10 ▶ Effective *reservation systems* inventory demand over a longer period of time and offer several benefits:

- o Helping to reduce or even avoid customers waiting in queues and thereby avoid dissatisfaction due to excessive waits
- o Allowing the firm to control demand and smooth it out
- o Enabling the use of revenue management to focus on increasing yield by reserving scarce capacity for higher-paying segments, rather than just selling off capacity on a first-come first-serve basis

LO 11 ▶ Even after professional management of capacity and demand, most service firms will still experience periods of excess capacity. Firms can take a strategic approach to the use of surplus capacity, including the following:

- o Use capacity for service differentiation. When capacity utilization is low, service employees can go all the way to truly wow their customers.
- o Reward the firm’s best customers and build loyalty (e.g., through special promotions as part of a loyalty program).
- o Customer and channel development (e.g., provide free or heavily discounted trials).
- o Reward employees (e.g., excess capacity in restaurants, beach resorts, or cruise lines can be used to reward loyal employees and their families).
- o Barter free capacity (e.g., service firms can barter excess capacity for advertising space, airline seats, and hotel rooms).

Endnotes

1. Based on material in James A. Fitzsimmons and M. J. Fitzsimmons, *Service Management: Operations, Strategy, and Information Technology*, 9th edition (New York: Irwin McGraw-Hill, 2020); W. Earl Sasser, Jr., "Match Supply and Demand in Service Industries," *Harvard Business Review* 54 (November–December 1976), pp. 133–140.
2. Kenneth J. Klassen and Thomas R. Rohleder, "Using Customer Motivations to Reduce Peak Demand: Does It Work?" *The Service Industries Journal*, 24 (September 2004): 53–70.
3. Jingqi Wang and Yong-Pin Zhou, "Impact of Queue Configuration on Service Time: Evidence from a Supermarket," *Management Science* 67(7) (2017): 2,973–2,994.
4. Kelly A. McGuire and Sheryl E. Kimes, "The Perceived Fairness of Waitlist-Management Techniques for Restaurants," *Cornell Hotel and Restaurant Administration Quarterly*, 47, May 2006, 121–134.
5. Anat Rafaeli, Greg Barron, and Keren Haber, "The Effects of Queue Structure on Attitudes," *Journal of Service Research* 5, November 2002, 125–139.
6. Duncan Dickson, Robert C. Ford, and Bruce Laval, "Managing Real and Virtual Waits in Hospitality and Service Organizations," *Cornell Hotel and Restaurant Administration Quarterly* 46 (February 2005): 52–68.
7. Ana B. Casado Diaz and Francisco J. Más Ruiz, "The Consumer's Reaction to Delays in Service," *International Journal of Service Industry Management* 13(2) (2002): 118–140; Frederic Bielen and Nathalie Demoulin, "Waiting Time Influence on the Satisfaction-Loyalty Relationship in Services," *Managing Service Quality* 17(2) (2007): 174–193.
8. Jay R. Chernow, "Measuring the Values of Travel Time Savings," *Journal of Consumer Research* 7 (March 1981): 360–371. This entire issue of the *Journal of Consumer Research* was devoted to the consumption of time.
9. This section draws on David H. Maister, "The Psychology of Waiting Lines," in J.A. Czepiel, M.R. Solomon, and C.F. Surprenant (eds.), *The Service Encounter* (Lexington, MA: Lexington Books/D.C. Heath, 1986), pp. 113–123; Peter Jones and Emma Peppiat, "Managing Perceptions of Waiting Times in Service Queues," *International Journal of Service Industry Management* 7(5) (1996), pp. 47–61; Clay M. Voorhees, Julie Baker, Brian L. Bourdeau, E. Deanne Brocato, and J. Joseph Cronin, Jr. "Moderating the Relationships among Perceived Waiting Time, Anger and Regret," *Journal of Service Research* 12(2) (November 2009): 138–155; Kelly A. McGuire, Sheryl E. Kimes, Michael Lynn, Madeline E. Pullman, and Russell C. Lloyd, "A Framework for Evaluating the Customer Wait Experience," *Journal of Service Management* 21(3) (2010): 269–290.
10. Irene C.L. Ng, Jochen Wirtz, and Khai Sheang Lee, "The Strategic Role of Unused Service Capacity," *International Journal of Service Industry Management* 10(2) (1999): 211–238.

crafting the

SERVICE

ENVIRONMENT

LEARNING OBJECTIVES (LOs)

By the end of this chapter, the reader should be able to:

- ▶ **LO 1** Recognize the four core purposes service environments fulfill.
- ▶ **LO 2** Know the theoretical underpinning from environmental psychology that helps us to understand how customers and employees respond to service environments.
- ▶ **LO 3** Be familiar with the integrative servicescape model.
- ▶ **LO 4** Know the three main dimensions of the service environment.
- ▶ **LO 5** Discuss the key ambient conditions and their effects on customers.
- ▶ **LO 6** Determine the roles of spatial layout and functionality.
- ▶ **LO 7** Understand the roles of signs, symbols, and artifacts.
- ▶ **LO 8** Know how service employees and other customers are part of the servicescape.
- ▶ **LO 9** Explain why designing an effective servicescape has to be done holistically and from the customer's perspective.
- ▶ **LO 10** Know the tools available to understand how customers use and respond to servicescapes.



Jules Selmes\Pearson Education Ltd.

Figure 10.1 The contemporary curves of the Guggenheim have drawn in both praise and crowds in large quantities.

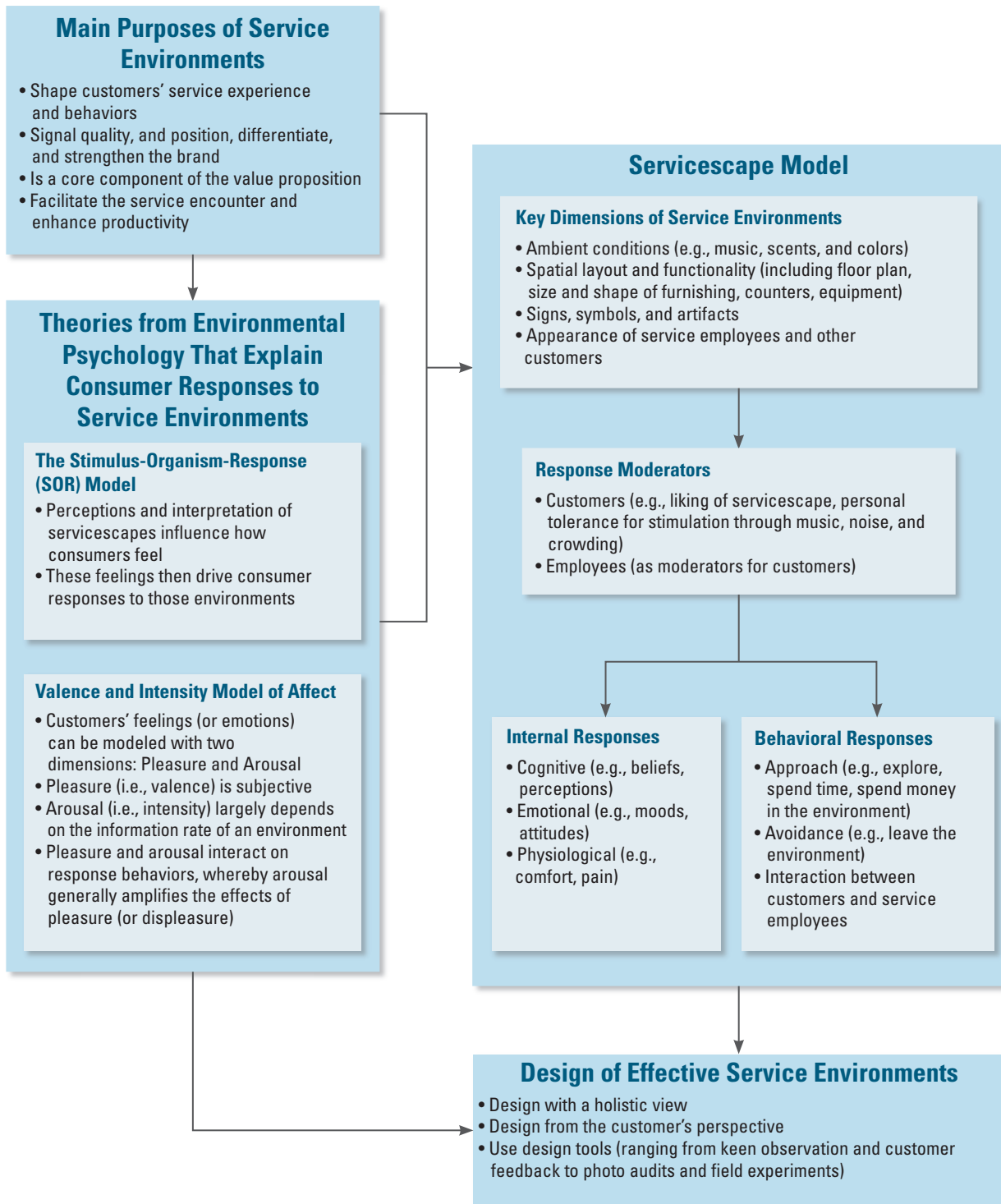


Figure 10.3 Designing the service environment.

- ▶ **Field experiments** can be used to manipulate specific dimensions in an environment so that their effects can be observed. For instance, researchers can experiment with various types of music and scents and then measure the time and money customers spend in the environment. Laboratory experiments with pictures, videos, or other ways to simulate real-world service environments (such as virtual tours via computer) can be effectively used to examine the impact of changes in design elements that cannot be easily manipulated in a field experiment. Examples include testing of different color schemes, spatial layouts, or styles of furnishing.
- ▶ **Blueprinting** or flowcharting (described in Chapter 8) can be extended to include the physical evidence in the environment. Design elements and tangible cues can be documented as the customer moves through each step of the service delivery process. Photos can supplement the map to make it more vivid.

These tools allow an organization to examine how the different environmental elements at each step of the customer journey exceed or fail to meet expectations. The more a service company can see, understand, and experience the same things as its customers, the better equipped will it be to realize errors in the design of its environment and to improve what is already functioning well.

CHAPTER SUMMARY

LO 1 ▶ Service environments fulfill four core purposes. Specifically, they

- o shape customers' experiences and behaviors.
- o play an important role in determining customer perceptions of the firm and its image and positioning. Customers often use the service environment as an important quality signal.
- o can be a core part of the value proposition (such as for theme parks and resort hotels).
- o facilitate the service encounter and enhance productivity.

LO 2 ▶ Environmental psychology provides the theoretical underpinning for understanding the effects of service environments on customers and service employees. There are two key models:

- o The Stimulus-Organism-Response (SOR) model holds that environments influence peoples' affective state (or emotions

and feelings), which in turn drives their behavior.

- o The valence and intensity model of affect holds that affect can be modeled with the two interacting dimensions of pleasure and arousal. Together, they determine whether people approach an environment and spend time and money in it or whether they avoid it.

LO 3 ▶ The servicescape model, which builds on the aforementioned theories, represents an integrative framework that explains how customers and service staff respond to key environmental dimensions.

LO 4 ▶ The servicescape model emphasizes three dimensions of the service environment:

- o Ambient conditions (including music, scents, and colors)
- o Spatial layout and functionality
- o Signs, symbols, and artifacts

CHAPTER SUMMARY

- LO 5** ▶ Ambient conditions refer to those characteristics of the environment that pertain to our five senses. Even when not consciously perceived, they can still affect people's internal and behavioral responses. Important ambient dimensions include
- o *Music*: Its tempo, volume, harmony, and familiarity shape behavior by affecting emotions and moods. People tend to adjust their pace to match the tempo of the music.
 - o *Scent*: Ambient scent can stir powerful emotions and relax or stimulate customers.
 - o *Color*: Colors can have strong effects on people's feelings, with warm (e.g., red and orange) and cold colors (e.g., blue) having different impacts. Warm colors are associated with elated moods, while cold colors are linked to peacefulness and happiness.
- LO 6** ▶ Effective spatial layout and functionality are important for making the service operation more efficient and enhancing its user friendliness.
- o Spatial layout refers to the floor plan; the size and shape of furnishings, counters, and potential machinery and equipment; and the ways in which they are arranged.
 - o Functionality refers to the ability of these items to facilitate service operations.
- LO 7** ▶ Signs, symbols, and artifacts help customers to draw meaning from the environment and guide them through the service process. They can be used to
- o label facilities, counters, or departments
 - o show directions (e.g., to the entrance, exit, elevator, or toilet)
 - o communicate the service script (e.g., take a queuing number and wait for it to be called)
 - o reinforce behavioral rules (e.g., "please switch your cell phones to silent mode")
- LO 8** ▶ The appearance and behavior of service employees and other customers in a servicescape can be part of the value proposition and can reinforce (or undermine) the positioning of the firm.
- LO 9** ▶ Service environments are perceived holistically. Therefore, no individual aspect can be optimized without considering everything else. The process of designing service environments is an art rather than a science.
- o Due to this challenge, professional designers tend to specialize on specific types of environments, such as hotel lobbies, clubs, and health-care facilities.
 - o The best service environments are designed not only on the basis of aesthetic considerations but, more importantly, with the customer's perspective in mind. The purpose is to guide customers smoothly through the service process.
- LO 10** ▶ Tools that can be used to design and improve servicescapes include careful observation, feedback from employees and customers, photo audits, field experiments, and blueprinting.

KNOW YOUR SERVICES MARKETING

Review Questions

1. What are the four main purposes service environments fulfill?
2. Describe how the Stimulus-Organism-Response (SOR) model and the valence and intensity model of affect explain consumer responses to a service environment.
3. What is the relationship or link between the valence and intensity model of affect and the servicescape model?
4. Why do different customers and service staff respond very differently to the same service environment?
5. Explain the dimensions of ambient conditions and the ways in which each can influence customer responses to the service environment.
6. What are the roles of signs, symbols, and artifacts?
7. What are the implications of the fact that service environments are perceived holistically?
8. What tools are available for aiding our understanding of customer responses and for guiding the design and improvement of service environments?

WORK YOUR SERVICES MARKETING

Application Exercises

1. Identify firms from three different service industries where the service environment is a crucial part of the overall value proposition. Analyze and explain in detail the value that is being delivered by the service environment in each of the three industries.
2. Visit a service environment and have a detailed look around. Experience the environment and try to understand how the various design elements shape what you feel and how you behave in that setting.
3. Select a bad and a good waiting experience, and contrast the two situations with respect to the service environment and the other people waiting.
4. Visit a self-service environment and analyze how the design dimensions guide you through the service process. Which elements do you find most effective, and which seem least effective? How can the environment be improved to make the “way-finding” process easier for self-service customers?
5. Take a camera and conduct a photo audit of a specific servicescape. Photograph examples of excellent and very poor design features. Develop concrete suggestions on how this environment could be improved.

Endnotes

1. Beatriz Plaza, “The Bilbao Effect,” *Museum News* (September–October 2007): 13–15, 68; Denny Lee, “Bilbao, 10 Years Later,” *The New York Times* (September 23, 2007), <http://www.nytimes.com/2007/09/23/travel/23bilbao.html?pagewanted=all&r=0>, accessed September 20, 2020; “The Bilbao Effect: If You Build It, Will They Come?,” *The Economist* (December 21, 2013): 5.

2. Madeleine E. Pullman and Michael A. Gross, “Ability of Experience Design Elements to Elicit Emotions and Loyalty Behaviors,” *Decision Sciences* 35(1) (2004): 551–578.

3. Anja Reimer and Richard Kuehn, “The Impact of Servicescape on Quality Perception,” *European Journal of Marketing* 39(7–8) (2005): 785–808.

4. Julie Baker, Dhruv Grewal, and A. Parasuraman, “The Influence of Store Environment on Quality Inferences and Store Image,” *Journal of the Academy of Marketing Science* 22(4) (1994): 328–339.

5. “Stores Worldwide,” MacRumors (May 12, 2020), <https://www.macrumors.com/roundup/apple-retail-stores>, accessed February 26, 2022; Lauren Thomas, “Bucks from Bricks: These Retailers Make the Most Money per Square Foot on

Their Real Estate” *CNBC* (July 29, 2017), <https://www.cnbc.com/2017/07/29/here-are-the-retailers-that-make-the-most-money-per-square-foot-on-their-real-estate.html>, accessed February 26, 2022.

6. For a review of the literature on hospital design effects on patients, see Karin Dijkstra, Marcel Pieterse, and Ad Pruyn, “Physical Environmental Stimuli That Turn Healthcare Facilities into Healing Environments through Psychologically Mediated Effects: Systematic Review,” *Journal of Advanced Nursing* 56(2) (2006): 166–181. For a study on the effects of servicescape design in a hospital setting on service workers’ job stress and job satisfaction, and subsequently, their commitment to the firm, see Janet Turner Parish, Leonard L. Berry, and Shun Yin Lam, “The Effect of the Servicescape on Service Workers,” *Journal of Service Research* 10(3) (2008): 220–238; see also the painstaking effort the Mayo Clinic has made to lower noise levels in its hospitals: Leonard L. Berry and Kent D. Seltman, *Management Lessons from Mayo Clinic: Inside One of the World’s Most Admired Service Organizations* (McGraw-Hill, 2008): 171–172.

7. Robert J. Donovan and John R. Rossiter, “Store Atmosphere: An Environmental Psychology Approach,” *Journal of Retailing* 58(1) (1982): 34–57.

8. James A. Russell, "A Circumplex Model of Affect," *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology* 39(6) (1980): 1161–1178.
9. Jochen Wirtz and John E. G. Bateson, "Consumer Satisfaction with Services: Integrating the Environmental Perspective in Services Marketing into the Traditional Disconfirmation Paradigm," *Journal of Business Research* 44(1) (1999): 55–66.
10. Jochen Wirtz, Anna S. Mattila, and Rachel L. P. Tan, "The Moderating Role of Target-Arousal on the Impact of Affect on Satisfaction: An Examination in the Context of Service Experiences," *Journal of Retailing* 76(3) (2000): 347–365; Jochen Wirtz, Anna S. Mattila, and Rachel L. P. Tan, "The Role of Desired Arousal in Influencing Consumers' Satisfaction Evaluations and In-Store Behaviours," *International Journal of Service Industry Management* 18(2) (2007): 6–24.
11. Mary Jo Bitner, "Servicescapes: The Impact of Physical Surroundings on Customers and Employees," *Journal of Marketing* 56 (April 1992): 57–71.
12. For a review of experimental studies on the atmospheric effects, refer to L.W. Turley and Ronald E. Milliman, "Atmospheric Effects on Shopping Behavior: A Review of the Experimental Literature," *Journal of Business Research* 49 (2000): 193–211; Julie Baker, Kara Bentley, and Charles Lamb, Jr., "Service Environment Research Opportunities," *Journal of Services Marketing* 34(3) (2020): 335–346; Steve Oakes, "The Influence of the Musicscape within Service Environments," *Journal of Services Marketing* 14(7) (2000): 539–556.
13. Steve Oakes, "The Influence of the Musicscape within Service Environments," *Journal of Services Marketing* 14(7) (2000): 539–556.
14. Laurette Dubé and Sylvie Morin, "Background Music Pleasure and Store Evaluation Intensity Effects and Psychological Mechanisms," *Journal of Business Research* 54 (2001): 107–113; Clare Caldwell and Sally A. Hibbert, "The Influence of Music Tempo and Musical Preference on Restaurant Patrons' Behavior," *Psychology and Marketing* 19(11) (2002): 895–917.
15. For a review of the effects of music on various aspects of consumer responses and evaluations, see Steve Oakes and Adrian C. North, "Reviewing Congruity Effects in the Service Environment Musicscape," *International Journal of Service Industry Management* 19(1) (2008): 63–82.
16. This section is based on "Classical Music and Social Control: Twilight of the Yobs," *The Economist* (January 8, 2005): 48.
17. Holger Roschk and Masoumeh Hosseinpour, "Pleasant Ambient Scents: A Meta-Analysis of Customer Responses and Situational Contingencies," *Journal of Marketing* 84(1) (2020): 125–145.
18. Alan R. Hirsch, *Dr. Hirsch's Guide to Scentsational Weight Loss* (UK: Harper Collins, 1997), pp. 12–15; <http://www.smellandtaste.org/>, accessed February 26, 2022.
19. Alan R. Hirsch, "Effects of Ambient Odors on Slot Machine Usage in a Las Vegas Casino," *Psychology and Marketing* 12, no. 7 (1995): 585–594.
20. Alan R. Hirsch and S. E. Gay, "Effect on Ambient Olfactory Stimuli on the Evaluation of a Common Consumer Product," *Chemical Senses* 16 (1991): 535.
21. See Ambius and Mood Media's websites for details of their scent marketing, ambient scenting, and sensory branding services at <https://www.ambius.com/> scenting and <https://us.moodmedia.com/scent/>; accessed February 26, 2022.
22. Linda Holtzschuhe, *Understanding Color: An Introduction for Designers*, 3rd edition (New Jersey: John Wiley, 2006), p. 51.
23. Albert Henry Munsell, *A Munsell Color Product* (New York: Kollmorgen Corporation, 1996).
24. Holtzschuhe, *Understanding Color*.
25. Holger Roschk, Sandra Maria Correia Loureiro, and Jan Breitsohl, "Calibrating 30 Years of Experimental Research: A Meta-Analysis of the Atmospheric Effects of Music, Scent and Color," *Journal of Retailing* 93(2) (2017): 228–240; Julie Baker, Kara Bentley, and Charles Lamb, Jr., "Service Environment Research Opportunities," *Journal of Services Marketing* 34(3) (2020): 335–346.
26. Joseph A. Bellizzi, Ayn E. Crowley, and Ronald W. Hasty, "The Effects of Color in Store Design," *Journal of Retailing* 59(1) (1983): 21–45.
27. Justin Bachman, "Airlines Add Mood Lighting to Chill Passengers Out: New Boeing and Airbus Models Offer Cabin Designers Splashy Ways to Engage Passengers with Light," *Bloomberg Business* (April 22, 2015), <http://www.bloomberg.com/news/articles/2015-04-22/airlines-add-mood-lighting-to-chill-passengers-out>, accessed February 26, 2022.
28. For an excellent review of the quality of signage management, see Angelo Bonfani, "Towards an Approach to Signage Management Quality (SMQ)," *Journal of Services Marketing* 27(4) (2013): 312–321. See also Vania Vigolo, Angelo Bonfanti, Rezarta Sallaku, and Jackie Douglas, "The Effect of Signage and Emotions on Satisfaction with the Servicescape: An Empirical Investigation in a Healthcare Service Setting," *Psychology and Marketing* 37(3) (2020): 408–417.
- With mobile technology and geotagging, personalized signage (e.g., on screens) has become feasible (e.g., signs can tell you where your car is parked or highlight a special offer that might be of interest to you); see Dhruv Grewal, Stephanie M. Noble, Anne L. Roggeveen, and Jens Nordfalt, "The Future of In-Store Technology," *Journal of the Academy of Marketing Science* 48(1) (2020): 96–113.
29. Dennis Nickson, Chris Warhurst, and Eli Dutton, "The Importance of Attitude and Appearance in the Service Encounter in Retail and Hospitality," *Managing Service Quality* 2 (2005): 195–208.
30. Christoph Breidbach, Sunmee Choi, Benjamin Ellway, Byron W. Keating, Katerina Kormusheva, Christian Kowalkowski, Chiehyeon Lim, and Paul Maglio, "Operating without Operations: How Is Technology Changing the Role of the Firm," *Journal of Service Management* 29(5) (2018): 809–833; Jonas Holmqvist, Jochen Wirtz, and Martin P. Fritze, "Luxury in the Digital Age: A Multi-Actor Service Encounter Perspective," *Journal of Business Research* 121 (December 2020): 747–756.
31. Ron Kaufman, "Service Power: Who Were They Designing it for?" Newsletter, May 2001, <http://ronkaufman.com>.
32. Alan d'Astous, "Irritating Aspects of the Shopping Environment," *Journal of Business Research* 49 (2000): 149–156.
33. Madeleine E. Pullman and Stephani K. A. Robson, "Visual Methods: Using Photographs to Capture Customers' Experience with Design," *Cornell Hotel and Restaurant Administration Quarterly* 48(2) (2007): 121–144.

managing people for SERVICE

ADVANTAGE

LEARNING OBJECTIVES (LOs)

By the end of this chapter, the reader should be able to:

- ▶ **LO 1** Explain why service employees are so important for the success of a firm.
- ▶ **LO 2** Understand the factors that make the work of front-line staff demanding and often difficult.
- ▶ **LO 3** Describe the cycles of failure, mediocrity, and success in human resources for service firms.
- ▶ **LO 4** Understand the key elements of the Service Talent Cycle for successful human resource management in service firms.
- ▶ **LO 5** Know how to attract, select, and hire the right people for service jobs.
- ▶ **LO 6** Explain the key areas in which service employees need training.
- ▶ **LO 7** Understand the role of internal marketing and communications.
- ▶ **LO 8** Understand why empowerment is so important in many front-line jobs.
- ▶ **LO 9** Explain how to build high-performance service delivery teams.
- ▶ **LO 10** Know how to integrate teams across departments and functional areas.
- ▶ **LO 11** Know how to motivate and energize service employees so that they will deliver service excellence and productivity.
- ▶ **LO 12** Understand what a service-oriented culture is.
- ▶ **LO 13** Know the difference between service climate and culture, and describe the determinants of a climate for service.
- ▶ **LO 14** Explain the qualities of effective leaders in service organizations.
- ▶ **LO 15** Understand different leadership styles and realize the importance of role modeling and focusing the entire organization on the front line.



Wavebreakmedia/
Shutterstock

Figure 11.1 A waitress's pride in her professionalism earns her admiration and respect from customers and co-workers.

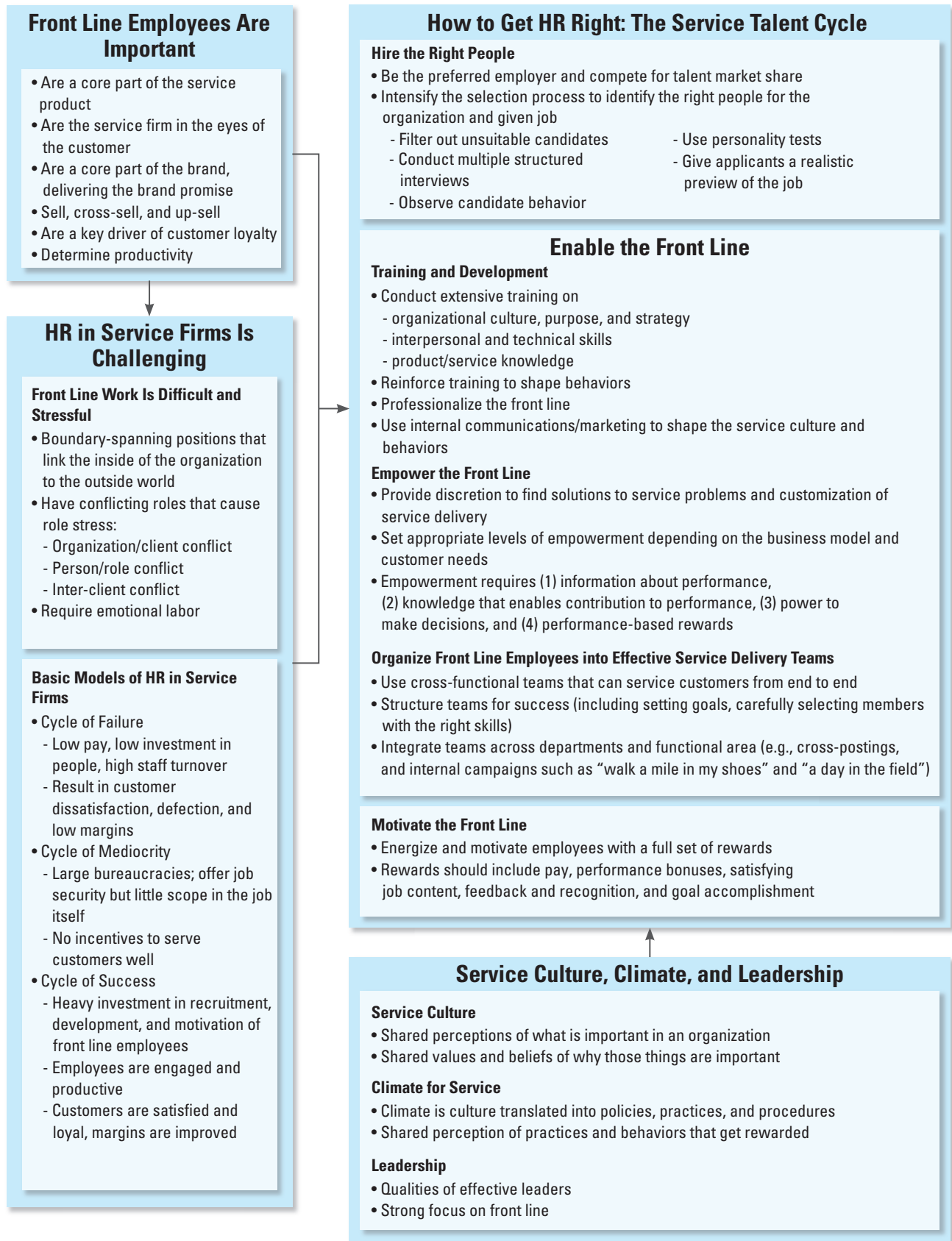


Figure 11.2 Organizing framework: Managing people for service advantage.

CHAPTER SUMMARY

- ▶ **LO 1** ▶ Service employees are extremely important for the success of a service firm because they
 - o are a core part of the service product
 - o represent the service firm in the eyes of the customer
 - o are a core part of the brand as they deliver the brand promise
 - o generate sales, cross-sales, and up-sales
 - o are a source of customer loyalty
 - o determine the productivity of front-line operations

- ▶ **LO 2** ▶ The work of front-line employees is difficult and stressful because they are in boundary-spanning positions that often entail
 - o organization–client conflicts
 - o person–role conflicts
 - o inter-client conflicts
 - o emotional labor and stress

- ▶ **LO 3** ▶ Three types of cycles involving front-line employees and customers describe how firms can be set up for failure, mediocrity, or success:
 - o The Cycle of Failure involves a strategy of low pay and high employee turnover. It results in high customer dissatisfaction and defections, which in turn depress profit margins.
 - o The Cycle of Mediocrity is typically found in large bureaucracies, offering job security but not much scope in the job itself. There is no incentive to serve customers well.
 - o Successful service firms operate in the Cycle of Success, where employees are satisfied with their jobs and are productive. As a consequence, customers are satisfied and loyal. Higher profit margins allow investment in the recruitment, development, and motivation of the right front-line employees.

- ▶ **LO 4** ▶ The Service Talent Cycle is a guiding framework for successful HR in service firms, helping them to move their firms into the Cycle of Success. Implementing the Service Talent Cycle correctly will give firms highly motivated and productive employees who are willing and able to deliver service excellence and go the extra mile for their customers. It has four key prescriptions:
 - o Hire the right people.
 - o Enable front-line employees.
 - o Motivate and energize them.
 - o Have a leadership team that fosters a climate for service, walks the talk, and emphasizes and supports the front line.

- ▶ **LO 5** ▶ Firms need to attract, select, and hire the right people for their firm and any given service job. Best-practice HR strategies start with the recognition that the labor market is highly competitive in many industries. In order to compete for talent, a firm must do the following:
 - o Work on being seen as a preferred employer, so that it can receive a large number of applications from the best potential candidates in the labor market.
 - o Carefully select new employees so that they fit both job requirements and the organization's culture. The best suited candidates are gained by first sifting out unsuitable candidates and then identifying the most suitable ones using multiple methods such as structured interviews, observation, personality tests, and realistic job previews.

To enable their front-line employees, firms need to perform the following:

- ▶ **LO 6** ▶ Conduct extensive training on (1) the organizational culture, purpose, and strategy; (2) interpersonal and technical skills; and (3) product/service knowledge.
- ▶ **LO 7** ▶ Use internal communications (also referred to as “internal marketing”) to reinforce the firm's service culture and convey the message to everyone in the company. An effective mix of internal communications tools should be used (e.g., e-mails; magazines; videos; briefings; and promotional campaigns using displays, prices, and recognition programs).
- ▶ **LO 8** ▶ Empower the front line so that they can respond with flexibility to customer needs, non-routine encounters, and service failures. Empowerment and training will give employees the authority, skills, and self-confidence to use their own initiative in delivering service excellence.
 - o Empowerment needs to be set at the appropriate level for the business model and customer needs. It ranges from the low level of empowerment in the “production-line” approach for highly standardized services to a high level of decision authority for the front line in more complex and customized services.
 - o Empowerment requires systematically distributing four key features: (1) information about organizational, team, and individual performance; (2) knowledge that enables employees to understand and contribute to performance; (3) power to make decisions; and (4) performance-based rewards.
- ▶ **LO 9** ▶ Organize front-line employees into effective (often cross-functional) service delivery teams that can serve their customers from end to end.

CHAPTER SUMMARY

- ▶ **LO 10** ▶
 - o Integrate service delivery teams across departments and functional areas. To be successful, the marketing, operations, human resources, and IT management functions need to be tightly integrated so that they can work together in well-coordinated ways. Integration means that the key deliverables and objectives of the various functions are not only compatible but also mutually reinforcing.
 - o Ways to improve integration include (1) internal transfers across functional areas; (2) cross-functional project teams; (3) cross-functional service delivery teams; (4) appointing individuals to integrate objective, processes, and activities between departments; (5) training, internal marketing, and campaigns (e.g., “walk a mile in my shoes” and “a day in the field”); and (6) management commitment to ensure that the overarching objectives of all functions are integrated.
- ▶ **LO 11** ▶
 - o Finally, energize and motivate employees with a full set of rewards such as pay, performance bonuses, satisfying job content, feedback, and recognition of goal accomplishment.

- ▶ **LO 12** ▶ A *service culture* describes the basic assumptions and values that guide organizational action. It can be boiled down to two points:
 - o shared perceptions of *what* is important in an organization, and
 - o shared values and beliefs about *why* those things are important.

An essential feature of a service-oriented culture is a strong belief in the importance of delivering superior value and service excellence. It builds employee understanding and support for the organization's goals that lead to those outcomes.

Exemplary leaders understand the powerful, unifying effect of focusing on customers and creating a service culture with values that inspire, energize, and guide service providers.

- ▶ **LO 13** ▶ A *service climate* is the surface layer on top of the culture. Climate is culture translated into the more concrete aspects that can be experienced by employees. It includes the policies, practices, and procedures of HR, operations, marketing, and IT. Climate also represents the shared perceptions of employees about the practices and behaviors that get rewarded in an organization.

- ▶ **LO 14** ▶ Service leaders should have the following qualities:
 - o Love for the business
 - o A set of core values related to service excellence and performance, which they pass on to the organization
 - o A strong belief in the people who work for them and recognition of the importance of the front line
 - o Ability to ask great questions and get answers from their teams
 - o Ability to role model the behaviors they expect from their teams
 - o Effective communication skills that allow leaders to inspire the organization to create success

- ▶ **LO 15** ▶ A leadership style that focuses on the basics and details creates a strong climate for service. Leaders should demonstrate a commitment to quality, set high standards, recognize and remove obstacles, and ensure the availability of the resources required to do it.

A strong service culture focuses on the front line. Leaders show by their actions that what happens at the front line is crucially important to them. The role of top and middle management is to support the front line in delivering service excellence to the firm's customers.

Endnotes

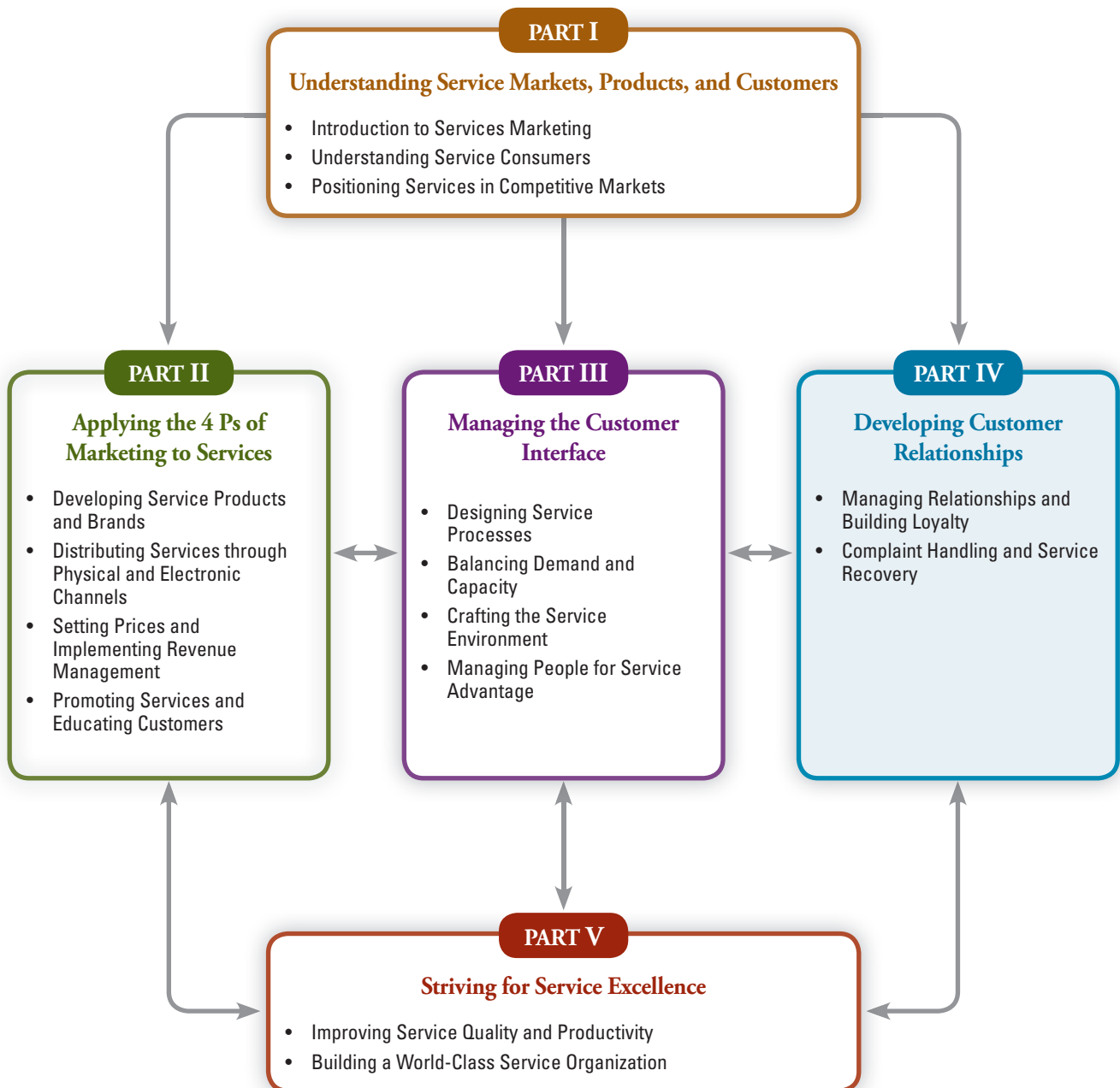
1. Adapted from Leonard L. Berry, *Discovering the Soul of Service: The Nine Drivers of Sustainable Business Success* (New York: The Free Press, 1999), pp. 156–159.
2. For research on how to strategically align front line employees and their behaviors with a firm's brand positioning to strengthen brand equity, see Nancy J. Sirianni, Mary Jo Bitner, Stephen W. Brown, and Naomi Mandel, "Branded Service Encounters: Strategically Aligning Employee Behavior with the Brand Positioning," *Journal of Marketing* 77(6) (2013): 108–123.

There is a large body of research that documents how and why employees have such a strong impact on customers' satisfaction and future behaviors. See Liliana L. Bove and Lester W. Johnson, "Customer Relationships with Service Personnel: Do We Measure Closeness, Quality or Strength?" *Journal of Business Research* 54 (2001): 189–197; Magnus Söderlund and Sara Rosengren, "Revisiting the Smiling Service Worker and Customer Satisfaction," *International Journal of Service Industry Management* 19(5) (2008): 552–574; Anat Rafaeli, Lital Ziklik, and Lorna Doucet, "The Impact of Call Center Employees' Customer Orientation Behaviors and Service Quality," *Journal of Service Research* 10(3) (2008): 239–255.
3. The following study established the link between extra-role effort and customer satisfaction: Carmen Barroso Castro, Enrique Martín Armario, and David Martín Ruiz, "The Influence of Employee Organizational Citizenship Behavior on Customer Loyalty," *International Journal of Service Industry Management* 15(1) (2004): 27–53.
4. James L. Heskett, Thomas O. Jones, Gary W. Loveman, W. Earl Sasser Jr., and Leonard A. Schlesinger, "Putting the Service Profit Chain to Work," *Harvard Business Review* 72 (March–April 1994): 164–174. For a meta-analysis confirming the links of the service-profit chain, see Jens Högrevé, Anja Iseke, Klaus Derfuss, and Tönnes Eller, "The Service-Profit Chain: A Meta-Analytic Test of a Comprehensive Theoretical Framework," *Journal of Marketing* 81(3): 41–61.
5. Benjamin Schneider and David E. Bowen, "The Service Organization: Human Resources Management Is Crucial," *Organizational Dynamics* 21(4) (Spring 1993): 39–52.
6. Phil Catelinet, "Just a Little Excitement on My Flight Today" (August 9, 2010), <http://www.fiveguysproductions.com/2010/08/just-little-excitement-on-my-flight.html>, accessed October 9, 2020.
7. Benjamin Schneider and David E. Bowen, "Boundary-Spanning Role Employees and the Service Encounter: Some Guidelines for Management and Research," in J.A. Czepiel, M.R. Solomon, and C.F. Surprenant (eds.), *The Service Encounter* (Lexington, MA: Lexington Books, 1985), pp. 127–148.
8. Vaikakalathur Shankar Mahesh and Anand Kasturi, "Improving Call Centre Agent Performance: A UK–India Study Based on the Agents' Point of View," *International Journal of Service Industry Management* 17(2) (2006): 136–157.
9. Patrick Meyer, Julia M. Jonas, and Angela Roth, "Frontline Employees' Acceptance of and Resistance to Service Robots in Stationary Retail: An Exploratory Interview Study," *Journal of Service Management Research* 4(1) (2020): 21–34; Sonja Christ-Brendemühl and Mario Schaarschmidt, "Frontline Backlash: Service Employees' Deviance from Digital Processes," *Journal of Services Marketing* 33(7) (2019): 936–945; Mahesh Subramony, Karen Holcombe Ehrhart, Markus Groth, Brooks C. Holtom, Danielle D. van Jaarsveld, Dana Yagil, Tiffany Darabi, David Walker, David E. Bowen, Raymond P. Fisk, Christian Grönroos, and Jochen Wirtz, "Accelerating Employee-Related Scholarship in Service Management: Research Streams, Propositions, and Commentaries," *Journal of Service Management* 28(5) (2017): 837–865.

Note that AI can also reduce employee stress by making their tasks easier, see Alexander P. Henkel, Stefano Bromuri, Deniz Iren, and Visara Urovi, "Half Human, Half Machine—Augmenting Service Employees with AI for Interpersonal Emotion Regulation," *Journal of Service Management* 31(2) (2020): 247–265.
10. Arlie R. Hochschild, *The Managed Heart: Commercialization of Human Feeling* (Berkeley: University of California Press, 1983).
11. Panikkos Constanti and Paul Gibbs, "Emotional Labor and Surplus Value: The Case of Holiday 'Reps,'" *The Service Industries Journal* 25 (January 2005): 103–116.
12. Arlie Hochschild, "Emotional Labor in the Friendly Skies," *Psychology Today* (June 1982): 13–15.
13. Michel Rod and Nicholas J. Ashill, "Symptoms of Burnout and Service Recovery Performance," *Managing Service Quality* 19(1) (2009): 60–84; Jody L. Crosno, Shannon B. Rinaldo, Hulda G. Black, and Scott W. Kelley, "Half Full or Half Empty: The Role of Optimism in Boundary-Spanning Positions," *Journal of Service Research* 11(3) (2009): 295–309.
14. Dan Moshavi and James R. Terbord, "The Job Satisfaction and Performance of Contingent and Regular Customer Service Representatives: A Human Capital Perspective," *International Journal of Service Industry Management* 13(4) (2002): 333–347.
15. Mahesh and Kasturi, "Improving Call Centre Agent Performance," 136–157.
16. The terms "Cycle of Failure" and "Cycle of Success" were coined by Leonard L. Schlesinger and James L. Heskett, "Breaking the Cycle of Failure in Services," *Sloan Management Review* (Spring 1991): 17–28. The term "Cycle of Mediocrity" comes from Christopher H. Lovelock, "Managing Services: The Human Factor," in W. J. Glynn and J. G. Barnes (eds.), *Understanding Services Management* (Chichester, UK: John Wiley & Sons, 1995), p. 228.
17. Schlesinger and Heskett, "Breaking the Cycle of Failure," pp. 17–28.
18. Jim Collins, *Good to Great: Why Some Companies Make the Leap... and Others Don't* (HarperBusiness, 2001).
19. Tor W. Andreassen and Even J. Lanseng, "Service Differentiation: A Self-Image Congruency Perspective on Brand Building in the Labor Market," *Journal of Service Management* 21(2) (2010): 212–236.
20. Kathleen A. Keeling, Peter J. McGoldrick, and Henna Sadhu, "Staff Word-of-Mouth (SWOM) and Retail Employee Recruitment," *Journal of Retailing* 89(1) (2013): 88–104.
21. www.glassdoor.com, accessed March 5, 2022.
22. Charles A. O'Reilly III and Jeffrey Pfeffer, *Hidden Value: How Great Companies Achieve Extraordinary Results with Ordinary People* (Boston, Massachusetts: Harvard Business School Press, 2000): 1.
23. Nancy J. Sirianni, Mary Jo Bitner, Stephen W. Brown, and Naomi Mandel, "Branded Service Encounters: Strategically Aligning Employee Behavior with the Brand Positioning," *Journal of Marketing* 77(6) (2013): 108–123; Birgit Löndorf and Adamantios Diamantopoulos, "Internal Branding: Social Identity and Social Exchange Perspectives on Turning Employees into Brand Champions," *Journal of Service Research* 17(3) (2014): 310–325.
24. Scott A. Hurrell and Dora Scholarios, "'The People Make the Brand': Reducing Social Skills Gaps through Person-Brand Fit and Human Resource Management Practices," *Journal of Service Research* 17(1) (2014): 54–67.
25. Bill Fromm and Len Schlesinger, *The Real Heroes of Business* (New York: Currency Doubleday, 1994), pp. 315–316.
26. Jim Collins, "Turning Goals into Results: The Power of Catalytic Mechanisms," *Harvard Business Review* (July–August 1999): 77.
27. Parts of this section were adapted from Benjamin Schneider and David E. Bowen, *Winning the Service Game* (Boston, MA: Harvard Business School Press, 1995), pp. 115–126.
28. John E.G. Bateson, Jochen Wirtz, Eugene F. Burke, and Carly J. Vaughan, "Sifting to Efficiently Select the Right Service Employees," *Organizational Dynamics* 43 (2014): 312–320; John E.G. Bateson, Jochen Wirtz, Eugene F. Burke, and Carly J. Vaughan, "When Hiring, First Test, and Then Interview," *Harvard Business Review* 91(11) (2013): 34.
29. John Wooden, *A Lifetime of Observations and Reflections on and off the Court* (Chicago: Lincolnwood, 1997), p. 66.
30. Tom J. Brown, John C. Mowen, D. Todd Donovan, and Jane W. Licata, "The Customer Orientation of Service Workers: Personality Trait Effects on Self and Supervisor Performance Ratings," *Journal of Marketing Research* 39(1) (2002): 110–119; John E. G. Bateson, Jochen Wirtz, Eugene F. Burke, and Carly J. Vaughan, "Sifting to Efficiently Select the Right Service Employees," *Organizational Dynamics* 43 (2014): 312–320.

31. Serene Goh, "All the Right Staff," and Arlina Arshad, "Putting Your Personality to the Test," *The Straits Times*, Singapore (September 5, 2001), H1.
32. Have a look at its website to see the tests that are available: <https://www.shl.com>, accessed on March 5, 2022.
33. This section was adapted from Leonard L. Berry, *On Great Service: A Framework for Action* (New York: The Free Press, 1995), pp. 181–182.
34. Yukari Iwatani Kane and Ian Sherr, "Secrets from Apple's Genius Bar: Full Loyalty, No Negativity," *Wall Street Journal* (June 15, 2011), <http://www.wsj.com/articles/SB10001424052702304563104576364071955678908>, accessed March 5, 2022.
35. Schneider and Bowen, *Winning the Service Game*, p. 131.
36. Berry, *Discovering the Soul of Service*, p. 161; Pep Simo, Mihaela Enache, Jose M. Sallan, and Vicenc Fernandez, "Relations between Organizational Commitment and Focal and Discretionary Behaviors," *The Service Industries Journal* 34(5) (2014): 422–438.
37. Disney Institute, *Be Our Guest: Perfecting the Art of Customer Service*, updated edition (Disney Enterprises, 2011).
38. David A. Tansik, "Managing Human Resource Issues for High Contact Service Personnel," in D.E. Bowen, R.B. Chase, T.G. Cummings, and associates (eds.), *Service Management Effectiveness* (San Francisco: Jossey-Bass, 1990), pp. 152–176; Kelly M. Wilder, Joel E. Collier, and Donald C. Barnes, "Tailoring to Customers' Needs: Understanding How to Promote an Adaptive Service Experience with Frontline Employees," *Journal of Service Research* 17(4) (2014): 446–459.
39. The Ritz Carlton Gold Standards can be viewed at www.ritzcarlton.com/en/about/gold-standards.
40. Joseph A. Mitchell, *The New Gold Standard: 5 Leadership Principles for Creating a Legendary Customer Experience Courtesy of The Ritz-Carlton Hotel Company* (McGraw Hill, 2008), pp. 61–66, and pp. 191–197.
41. Paul Hemp, "My Week as a Room-Service Waiter at the Ritz," *Harvard Business Review* 80 (June 2002): 8–11.
42. Parts of this section are based on David E. Bowen and Edward E. Lawler III, "The Empowerment of Service Workers: What, Why, How and When," *Sloan Management Review* (Spring 1992): 32–39.
43. Robert Spector and Patrick D. McCarthy, *The Nordstrom Way to Customer Service Excellence: The Handbook for Becoming the "Nordstrom" of Your Industry*, 2nd edition (New York: John Wiley & Sons, 2012).
44. Michael K. Brady, Clay M. Voorhees, and Michael J. Brusco, "Service Sweethearting: Its Antecedents and Customer Consequences," *Journal of Marketing* 76(2) (2012): 81–98.
45. Dana Yagil, "The Relationship of Customer Satisfaction and Service Workers' Perceived Control: Examination of Three Models," *International Journal of Service Industry Management* 13(4) (2002): 382–398.
46. Graham L. Bradley and Beverley A. Sparks, "Customer Reactions to Staff Empowerment: Mediators and Moderators," *Journal of Applied Social Psychology* 30(5) (2000): 991–1012.
47. Bowen and Lawler, "The Empowerment of Service Workers": 32–39.
48. Schneider and Bowen, *Winning the Service Game*, p. 250.
49. The system is described in Serguei Netessine and Valery Yakubovich, "The Darwinian Workplace," *Harvard Business Review* 90 (May 2012): 25–28; Karan Girotra and Serguei Netessine, "Four Paths to Business Model Innovation: The Secret to Success Lies in Who Makes the Decisions When and Why," *Harvard Business Review* 92(7–8) (2014): 96–103.
50. Jun Ye, Detelina Marionova, and Jagdip Singh, "Bottom-Up Learning in Marketing Frontlines: Conceptualization, Processes, and Consequences," *Journal of the Academy of Marketing Science* 40(6) (2012): 821–844.
51. Jon R. Katzenbach and Douglas K. Smith, "The Discipline of Teams," *Harvard Business Review* (March–April 1993): 112.
52. For the effects and drivers of alignment between leaders and their service delivery teams, see Alexander Benlian, "Are We Aligned... Enough? The Effects of Perceptual Congruence between Service Teams and Their Leaders on Team Performance," *Journal of Service Research* 17(2) (2014): 212–228.
53. Berry, *On Great Service*, p. 131.
54. O'Reilly and Pfeffer, *Hidden Value*, p. 9.
55. Robert J. Kwortnik, Jr., and Gary M. Thompson, "Unifying Service Marketing and Operations with Service Experience Management," *Journal of Service Research* 11(4) (2009): 389–406.
56. Adapted from Kevin Freiberg and Jackie Freiberg, *Nuts! Southwest Airlines' Crazy Recipe for Business and Personal Success* (New York: Broadway Books, 1997), pp. 165–168.
57. This section is based on Schneider and Bowen, *Winning the Service Game*, pp. 145–173.
58. Linda Nasr, Jamie Burton, Thorsten Gruber, and Jan Kitshoff, "Exploring the Impact of Customer Feedback on the Well-Being of Service Entities: A TSR Perspective," *Journal of Service Management* 25(4) (2014): 531–555.
59. Adam M. Grant, "How Customers Can Rally Your Troops," *Harvard Business Review* (June 2011): 96–103; Linda Nasr, Jamie Burton, and Thorsten Gruber, "Developing a Deeper Understanding of Positive Customer Feedback," *Journal of Services Marketing* 32(2) (2018): 142–160; Rebecca M. Guidice, and Brian R. Kinard, "Delight Spirals: The Cause and Consequence of Employee Perceived Customer Delight," *Journal of Service Theory and Practice* 30(2) (2020): 149–170; Stijn M. J. van Osselaer, Christoph Fuchs, Martin Schreier, and Stefano Puntoni, "The Power of Personal," *Journal of Retailing* 96(1) (2020): 88–100.
60. O'Reilly and Pfeffer, *Hidden Value*, p. 232.
61. This section is based in part on Schneider and Bowen, *Winning the Service Game*; Benjamin Schneider and David E. Bowen, "A Service Climate Synthesis and Future Research Agenda," *Journal of Service Research* 17(1) (2014): 5–22.
62. Berry, *On Great Service*, pp. 236–237; Leonard L. Berry and Kent D. Seltman, *Management Lessons from Mayo Clinic: Inside One of the World's Most Admired Service Organizations* (McGraw Hill, 2008).
63. For an excellent review of the extant service-climate literature and related constructs, see Bowen and Schneider, "Service Climate Synthesis and Future Research Agenda," pp. 5–22.
64. Hans Kasper, "Culture and Leadership in Market-Oriented Service Organisations," *European Journal of Marketing* 36(9–10) (2002): 1047–1057; Ronald A. Clark, Michael D. Hartline, and Keith C. Jones, "The Effects of Leadership Style on Hotel Employees' Commitment to Service Quality," *Cornell Hospitality Quarterly* 50(2) (2009): 209–231.
65. Drawn from several sources, including Leonard L. Berry, *Discovering the Soul of Service*, pp. 44, 47; J. Hamm, "The Five Messages Leaders Must Manage," *Harvard Business Review* (May 2006): 115–123; D. Blagg and S. Young, "What Makes a Leader?" *Harvard Business School Bulletin* (February 2001), pp. 31–36; Jim Collins, "Level 5 Leadership: The Triumph of Humility and Fierce Resolve," *Harvard Business Review* (January 2001), pp. 66–76; Hung Trong Hoang, Sally Rao Hill, Vinh Nhat Lu, and Susan Freeman, "Drivers of Service Climate: An Emerging Market Perspective," *Journal of Services Marketing* 32(4) (2018): 476–492; Flavia Cavazotte, Valter Moreno, and Luis Cesar Chehab Lasmar, "Enabling Customer Satisfaction in Call Center Teams: The Role of Transformational Leadership in the Service-Profit Chain," *The Service Industries Journal* 40(5–6) (2020): 380–393; Xiao-Yu Liu and Yongmei Liu, "The Service Smile Chain: Linking Leader Emotions to Customer Outcomes," *The Service Industries Journal* 40(5–6) (2020), pp. 415–435.
66. Heskett et al., "Putting the Service Profit Chain to Work": 164.
67. Thomas J. Peters and Robert H. Waterman, *In Search of Excellence* (New York: Harper & Row, 1982), p. 122.
68. Rik Kirkland, "Leading in the 21st Century: An Interview with Hertz CEO Mark Frissora," *McKinsey Quarterly* (November 2013).
69. Catherine DeVrye, *Good Service Is Good Business* (Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 2000), p. 11.
70. Tony Hsieh, *Delivering Happiness: A Path to Profits, Passion and Purpose* (New York: Business Plus, 2010), p. 153.
71. Jochen Wirtz and Ron Kaufman, "Revolutionizing Customer Service," *Harvard Business Review* 94(4) (2016): 26–27.

THE *ESM* FRAMEWORK



Developing Customer Relationships

Part IV focuses on developing customer relationships through building loyalty and effective complaint handling and service recovery for long-term profitability. It consists of the following two chapters:



Chapter 12 Managing Relationships and Building Loyalty

Chapter 12 focuses on achieving profitability by creating relationships with customers from the right segments and then finding ways to build and reinforce their loyalty using the Wheel of Loyalty as an organizing framework. This chapter closes with a discussion of customer relationship management (CRM) systems.

Chapter 13 Complaint Handling and Service Recovery

Chapter 13 examines how effective complaint handling and professional service recovery can be implemented. It starts with a review of consumer complaining behavior and principles of effective service recovery. Service guarantees are discussed as a powerful way of institutionalizing effective service recovery and as an effective marketing tool signaling high-quality service. The chapter also discusses how to deal with jaycustomers who take advantage of service recovery policies and abuse the service in other ways.

managing

RELATIONSHIPS and BUILDING LOYALTY

LEARNING OBJECTIVES (LOs)

By the end of this chapter, the reader should be able to:

- ▶ **LO 1** Recognize the important role customer loyalty plays in driving a service firm's profitability.
- ▶ **LO 2** Calculate the lifetime value (LTV) of a loyal customer.
- ▶ **LO 3** Understand why customers are loyal to a particular service firm.
- ▶ **LO 4** Know the core strategies of the Wheel of Loyalty that explain how to develop a loyal customer base.
- ▶ **LO 5** Appreciate why it is so important for service firms to target the "right" customers.
- ▶ **LO 6** Use service tiering to manage the customer base and build loyalty.
- ▶ **LO 7** Understand the relationship between customer satisfaction and loyalty.
- ▶ **LO 8** Know how to deepen the relationship through cross-selling and bundling.
- ▶ **LO 9** Understand the role of financial and non-financial loyalty rewards in enhancing customer loyalty.
- ▶ **LO 10** Appreciate the power of social, customization, and structural bonds in enhancing loyalty.
- ▶ **LO 11** Understand what factors cause customers to switch to a competitor and how to reduce such switching.
- ▶ **LO 12** Know why loyalty programs and customer relationship management (CRM) systems are important enablers of delivering loyalty strategies.
- ▶ **LO 13** Understand the part played by CRM systems in delivering customized services and building loyalty.



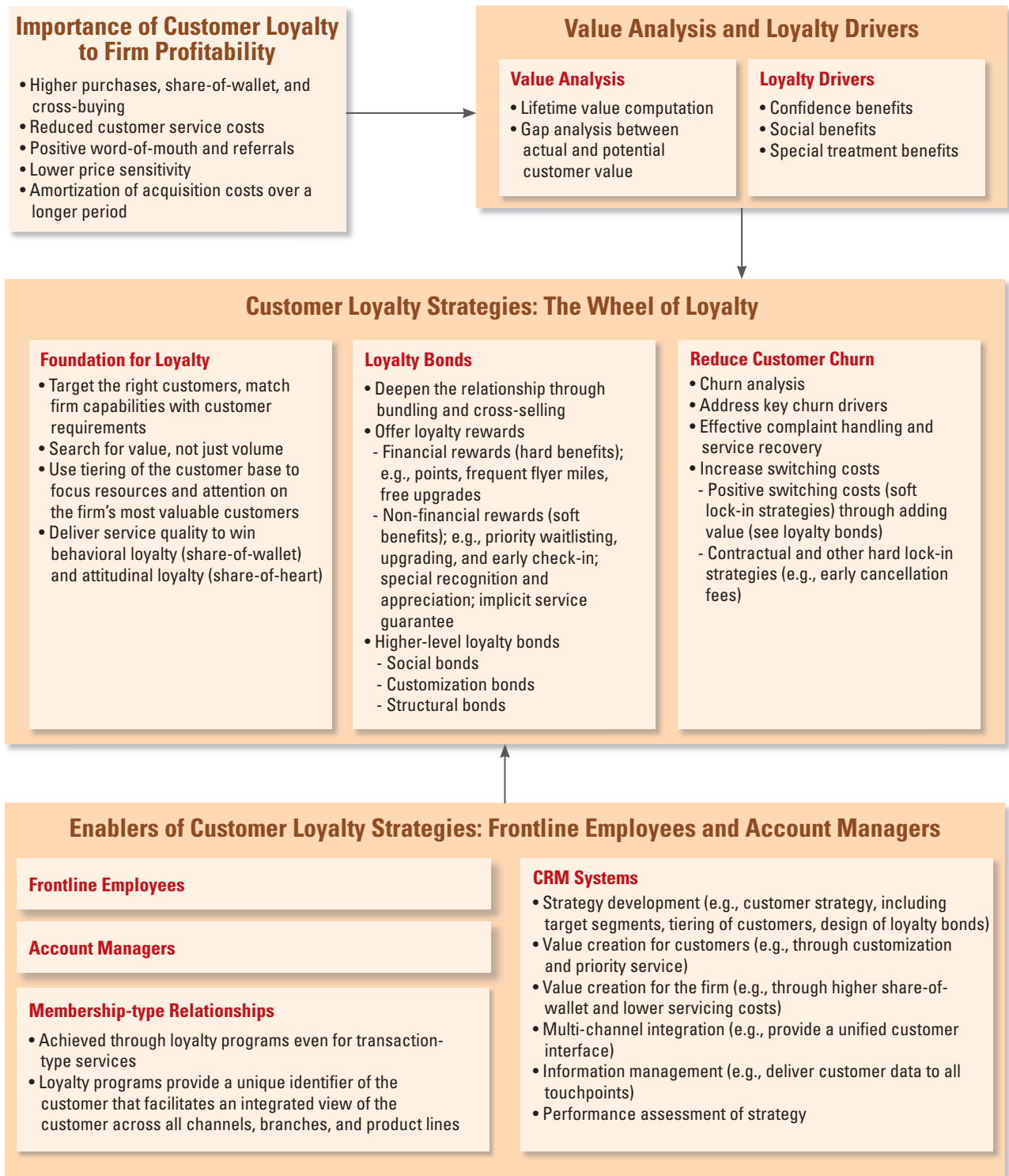


Figure 12.3 Organizing framework for managing relationships and building loyalty.

CHAPTER SUMMARY

LO 1 ▶ Customer loyalty is an important driver of a service firm's profitability. The profits derived from loyal customers come from (1) increased purchases, (2) reduced operation costs, (3) referral of new customers, and (4) price premiums. In addition, customer acquisition costs can be amortized over a longer period of time.

LO 2 ▶ To understand the profit impact of the customers, firms should calculate the lifetime value (LTV) of their customers. LTV calculations need to include (1) acquisition costs, (2) revenue streams, (3) account-specific servicing costs, (4) the expected number of years the customer will stay with the firm, and (5) the discount rate for future cash flows.

LO 3 ▶ Customers are only loyal if they benefit in some way. Common benefits customers see in being loyal include

- o *confidence benefits*, including the feeling that there is less risk of something going wrong and the ability to trust the provider
- o *social benefits*, including being known by name, being on friendly terms with the service provider, and enjoying certain social aspects of the relationship
- o *special treatment benefits*, including better prices, extra services, and higher priority

LO 4 ▶ It is not easy to build customer loyalty. The *Wheel of Loyalty* offers a systematic framework that guides firms on how to do so. The framework has three components that follow a sequence.

- o First, firms need to build a *foundation for loyalty*, without which loyalty cannot be achieved. The foundation delivers confidence benefits to its loyal customers.
- o Once the foundation has been laid, firms can create *loyalty bonds* to strengthen the relationship. These bonds should deliver social and special treatment benefits.
- o Finally, firms also have to work on reducing *customer churn*.

To build the foundation for loyalty, firms need to

LO 5 ▶ Segment the market and *target the "right" customers*. A firm needs to choose its target segments carefully and match them to its own capabilities. It also needs to focus on customer value and fit rather than only on customer volume.

LO 6 ▶ Manage the customer base via *service tiering*, which divides the customer base into different value tiers (e.g., platinum, gold, iron, and lead). It helps the firm to tailor strategies to the different service tiers. The higher tiers offer higher value for the firm but also expect higher service levels. For

the lower tiers, the focus should be on increasing profitability by building volume, increasing prices, cutting service costs, and sometimes even ending unprofitable relationships.

LO 7 ▶ The foundation for loyalty lies in customer satisfaction. The satisfaction–loyalty relationship can be divided into three main zones: defection, indifference, and affection. Only highly satisfied or delighted customers who are in the zone of affection will be truly loyal. True loyalty covers both behavioral loyalty (share of wallet and referral behavior) and attitudinal loyalty (share of heart).

Loyalty bonds are used to build relationships with customers. There are three different types of customer bonds:

LO 8 ▶ The relationship bonds with customers can be deepened through cross-selling and bundling, which make switching more difficult and increase convenience through one-stop shopping.

LO 9 ▶ Reward-based loyalty programs aim at building share of wallet through financial rewards (e.g., loyalty points) and non-financial rewards (e.g., higher-tier service levels, priority service, recognition, and appreciation).


LO 10 ▶ Higher level bonds include social, customization, and structural bonds. Competing firms usually find these bonds more difficult to copy than reward-based bonds.

LO 11 ▶ The final step in the Wheel of Loyalty is to understand what causes customers to leave and then systematically reduce these *churn drivers*.

- o Common causes for customers to switch include core service failures and dissatisfaction, deceptive and unfair pricing, inconvenience, poor response to service failures, and the overall perception that the provider has an inferior performance on key attributes compared to the best alternative provider.
- o To prevent customers from switching, firms should (1) analyze and address the key reasons why their customers leave them, (2) have good complaint-handling and service-recovery processes in place, and (3) increase "positive" customer switching costs.

LO 12 ▶ Most strategies discussed in the Wheel of Loyalty require an in-depth understanding of customers to actively improve loyalty. For example, unless a firm knows the consumption behavior of individual customers, it cannot apply tiering of service, customization, personalization, and churn management. In such cases, "membership-type" relationships are needed. These can be created even for transaction-type services through loyalty programs, apps, and CRM systems.

CHAPTER SUMMARY

-  **LO 13** ▶ Finally, CRM systems should be seen as enabling the successful implementation of the Wheel of Loyalty. CRM systems are particularly useful when firms have to serve large numbers of customers across many service delivery channels. An effective CRM strategy includes five key processes:
- o Strategy development, including choice of target segments, tiering of service, and design of loyalty rewards
 - o Value creation, including delivering benefits to customers through tiered services and loyalty programs (e.g., priority wait listing and upgrades)
 - o Multi-channel integration to provide a unified customer interface across many different service delivery channels (e.g., from the website and app to the branch office)
 - o Information management, which includes the data repository, analytical tools (e.g., campaign management analysis and churn-alert systems), and front- and back-office applications.
 - o Performance assessment, which has to address three questions:
 - (1) Is the CRM creating value for the customers and the firm?
 - (2) Are its marketing objectives being achieved?
 - (3) Is the CRM system itself performing according to expectations?
 - o Performance assessment should lead to the continuous improvement of the CRM strategy and system.

Endnotes

1. James L. Heskett, W. Earl Sasser Jr., and Joe Wheeler, *The Ownership Quotient* (Boston: Harvard Business Press, 2008), pp. 9–13; <https://www.caesars.com/myrewards/benefits-overview>, accessed March 7, 2022.
2. Frederick F. Reichheld and Thomas Teal, *The Loyalty Effect* (Boston: Harvard Business School Press, 1996).
3. The first four factors were proposed by Frederick F. Reichheld and W. Earl Sasser Jr., “Zero Defections: Quality Comes to Services,” *Harvard Business Review* (October 1990): 105–111. The fifth factor was added by the authors of this book.
4. Share of wallet (SOW) refers to the percentage of a customer’s total spending on a product category that is captured by a business. For example, if a customer spends a total of \$6,000 per annum on air travel, of which \$2,400 goes to airline A, then airline A’s share of wallet is 40%.
5. Christian Homburg, Nicole Koschate, and Wayne D. Hoyer, “Do Satisfied Customers Really Pay More? A Study of the Relationship between Customer Satisfaction and Willingness to Pay,” *Journal of Marketing* 69 (April 2005): 84–96.
6. Reichheld and Sasser, “Zero Defections”: 105–111.
7. For a discussion on how to evaluate the customer base of a firm, see Sunil Gupta, Donald R. Lehmann, and Jennifer Ames Stuart, “Valuing Customers,” *Journal of Marketing Research* 41(1) (2004): 7–18.
8. Alan W. H. Grant and Leonard H. Schlesinger, “Realize Your Customer’s Full Profit Potential,” *Harvard Business Review* 73 (September–October 1995): 59–75. See also Nicolas Glady and Christophe Croux, “Predicting Customer Wallet without Survey Data,” *Journal of Service Research* 11(3) (2009): 219–231.
9. Ruth Bolton, Katherine N. Lemon, and Peter C. Verhoef, “The Theoretical Underpinnings of Customer Asset Management: A Framework and Propositions for Future Research,” *Journal of the Academy of Marketing Science* 32(3) (2004): 271–292.
10. Kevin P. Gwinner, Wayne D. Gremler, and Mary Jo Bitner, “Relational Benefits in Services Industries: The Customer’s Perspective,” *Journal of the Academy of Marketing Science* 26(2) (1998): 101–114. The customer comments shown in the next paragraphs in the main text were taken from this study.
11. Yuping Liu, “The Long-Term Impact of Loyalty Programs on Consumer Purchase Behavior and Loyalty,” *Journal of Marketing* 71(4) (October 2007): 19–35.
12. Mark R. Vondrasek, “Redefining Service Innovation at Starwood,” *McKinsey Quarterly* (February 2015).
13. Roger Hallowell, “The Relationships of Customer Satisfaction, Customer Loyalty, and Profitability: An Empirical Study,” *International Journal of Service Industry Management* 7(4) (1996): 27–42.
14. David Rosenblum, Doug Tomlinson, and Larry Scott, “Bottom-Feeding for Blockbuster Business,” *Harvard Business Review* (March 2003): 52–59.
15. Christian Homburg, Mathias Droll, and Dirk Totzek, “Customer Prioritization: Does It Pay Off, and How Should It Be Implemented?” *Journal of Marketing* 72(5) (2008): 110–130.
16. Valarie A. Zeithaml, Roland T. Rust, and Katharine N. Lemon, “The Customer Pyramid: Creating and Serving Profitable Customers,” *California Management Review* 43(4) (Summer 2001): 118–142.
17. Vikras Mittal, Matthew Sarkees, and Feisal Murshed, “The Right Way to Manage Unprofitable Customers,” *Harvard Business Review* (April 2008): 95–102; Hui Feng, Neil A Morgan, and Lopo L. Rego, “The Impact of Unprofitable Customer Management Strategies on Shareholder Value,” *Journal of the Academy of Marketing Science* 48(2) (2020): 246–269.
18. Florian V. Wangenheim, “Postswitching Negative Word of Mouth,” *Journal of Service Research* 8(1) (2005): 67–78.
19. For a review of the satisfaction–loyalty link, see V. Kumar, Ilaria Dalla Pozza, and Jaishankar Ganesh, “Revisiting the Satisfaction–Loyalty Relationship: Empirical Generalizations and Directions for Further Research,” *Journal of Retailing* 89(3) (2013): 246–262.
20. Absolute satisfaction scores are less important in determining loyalty behaviors than being seen as the best or preferred provider. See Timothy L. Keiningham, Lerzan Aksoy, Alexander Buoye, and Bruce Cooil, “Customer Loyalty Isn’t Enough. Grow Your Share-of-Wallet,” *Harvard Business Review* 89(10) (2011): 29–31; Timothy L. Keiningham, Lerzan Aksoy, Luke Williams, and Alexander Buoye, *The Wallet Allocation Rule: Winning the Battle for Share* (Hoboken, New Jersey: John Wiley & Sons, 2015).
21. Leonard L. Berry and A. Parasuraman, “Three Levels of Relationship Marketing,” in *Marketing Services: Competing through Quality* (New York: The Free Press, 1991), pp. 136–142; Valarie A. Zeithaml, Mary Jo Bitner, and Dwayne D. Gremler, Chapter 7, *Services Marketing*, 6th ed. (New York: McGraw-Hill, 2012).
22. Heiner Evanschitzky, B. Ramaseshan, David M. Woitschlagler, Verena Richelsen, Markus Blut, and Christof Backhaus, “Consequences of Customer Loyalty to the Loyalty Program and to the Company,” *Journal of the Academy of Marketing Science* 40(5) (2012): 625–638; Michael Lewis, “The Influence of Loyalty Programs and Short-Term Promotions on Customer Retention,” *Journal of Marketing Research* 41 (August 2004): 281–292; Jochen Wirtz, Anna S. Mattila, and May Oo Lwin, “How Effective Are Loyalty Reward Programs in Driving Share-of-Wallet?” *Journal of Service Research* 9(4) (2007): 327–334.
23. Grahame Dowling and Mark Uncles, “Do Customer Loyalty Programs Really Work?” *Sloan Management Review* 38(4) (1997): 71–82. Furthermore, developing differentiated loyalty programs can be an additional strategy to tie customers closer to the firm; see Alina Nastasoiu and Mark Vandenbosch, “Competing with Loyalty: How to Design Successful Customer Loyalty Reward Programs,” *Business Horizons* 62(2) (2019): 207–214.
24. Matthew Dixon, Karen Freeman, and Nicholas Toman, “Stop Trying to Delight Your Customers,” *Harvard Business Review* (July–August 2010): 116–122.
25. Bernd Stauss, Maxie Schmidt, and Andrea Schoeler, “Customer Frustration in Loyalty Programs,” *International Journal of Service Industry Management* 16(3) (2005): 229–252; B. Ramaseshan and Robyn Ouschan, “Investigating Status Demotion in Hierarchical Loyalty Programs,” *Journal of Services Marketing* 31(6) (2017): 650–661.
26. Concrete benefits related to the core service (e.g., priority early check-in and priority wait listing) are more effective in driving customer gratitude and sales growth than status elevation without concrete benefits (i.e., the status is mostly symbolic). The latter can have a negative effect on profitability as it is more likely to increase customer entitlement perceptions, which in turn result in higher service costs. See Hauke A. Wetzel, Maik Hammerschmidt, and Alex R. Zablah, “Gratitude versus Entitlement: A Dual Process Model of the Profitability Implications of Customer Prioritization,” *Journal of Marketing* 78(2) (2014): 1–19.
27. Paolo Guenzi, Michael D. Johnson, and Sandro Castaldo, “A Comprehensive Model of Customer Trust in Two Retail Stores,” *Journal of Service Management* 20(3) (2009): 290–316; Dwayne Ball, Pedro S. Coelho, and Manuel J. Vilares, “Service Personalization and Loyalty,” *Journal of Services Marketing* 20(6) (2006): 391–403.
28. Mark S. Rosenbaum, Amy L. Ostrom, and Ronald Kuntze, “Loyalty Programs and a Sense of Community,” *Journal of Services Marketing* 19(4) (2005): 222–233.
29. <https://www.fairmont.com/fpc/benefits>, accessed July 20, 2015.
30. Rick Ferguson and Kelly Hlavinka, “The Long Tail of Loyalty: How Personalized Dialogue and Customized Rewards Will Change Marketing Forever,” *Journal of Consumer Marketing* 23(6) (2006): 357–361.
31. Susan M. Keaveney, “Customer Switching Behavior in Service Industries: An Exploratory Study,” *Journal of Marketing* 59 (April 1995): 71–82.

32. Jochen Wirtz, Ping Xiao, Jeongwen Chiang, and Naresh Malhotra, "Contrasting Switching Intent and Switching Behavior in Contractual Service Settings," *Journal of Retailing* 90(4) (2014): 463–480.
33. For a more detailed discussion of situation-specific switching behavior, refer to Inger Roos, Bo Edvardsson, and Anders Gustafsson, "Customer Switching Patterns in Competitive and Noncompetitive Service Industries," *Journal of Service Research* 6(3) (2004): 256–271.
34. Ali Tamaddoni, Stanislav Stakhovych, and Michael Ewing, "Comparing Churn Prediction Techniques and Assessing Their Performance: A Contingent Perspective," *Journal of Service Research* 19(2) (2016): 123–141.
35. Gianfranco Walsh, Keith Dinnie, and Klaus-Peter Wiedmann, "How Do Corporate Reputation and Customer Satisfaction Impact Customer Defection? A Study of Private Energy Customers in Germany," *Journal of Services Marketing* 20(6) (2006): 412–420.
36. Jonathan Lee, Janghyuk Lee, and Lawrence Feick, "The Impact of Switching Costs on the Consumer Satisfaction–Loyalty Link: Mobile Phone Service in France," *Journal of Services Marketing* 15(1) (2001): 35–48; Shun Yin Lam, Venkatesh Shankar, M. Krishna Erramilli, and Bvsnan Murthy, "Customer Value, Satisfaction, Loyalty, and Switching Costs: An Illustration from a Business-to-Business Service Context," *Journal of the Academy of Marketing Science* 32(3) (2004): 293–311; Michael A. Jones, Kristy E. Reynolds, David L. Mothersbaugh, and Sharon Beatty, "The Positive and Negative Effects of Switching Costs on Relational Outcomes," *Journal of Service Research* 9(4) (2007): 335–355; Dahlia El-Manstrly, "Enhancing Customer Loyalty: Critical Switching Cost Factors," *Journal of Service Management* 27(2) (2016): 144–169.
37. Simon J. Bell, Seigyoung Auh, and Karen Smalley, "Customer Relationship Dynamics: Service Quality and Customer Loyalty in the Context of Varying Levels of Customer Expertise and Switching Costs," *Journal of the Academy of Marketing Science* 33(2) (2005): 169–183; Markus Blut, Sharon E. Beatty, Heiner Evanschitzky, and Christian Brock, "The Impact of Service Characteristics on the Switching Cost–Customer Loyalty Link," *Journal of Retailing* 90(2) (2014): 275–290; David M. Gray, Steven D'Alessandro, Lester W. Johnson, and Leanne Carter (2017), "Inertia in Services: Causes and Consequences for Switching," *Journal of Services Marketing* 31(6): 485–498.
38. Arvind Malhotra and Claudia Kubowicz Malhotra, "Exploring Mobile Switching Behavior of U.S. Mobile Service Customers," *Journal of Services Marketing* 27(1) (2013): 13–24; Liane Nagengast, Heiner Evanschitzky, Markus Blut, and Thomas Rudolph, "New Insights in the Moderating Effect of Switching Costs on the Satisfaction–Repurchase Behavior Link," *Journal of Retailing* 90(3) (2014): 408–427.
39. Lesley White and Venkat Yanamandram, "Why Customers Stay: Reasons and Consequences of Inertia in Financial Services," *International Journal of Service Industry Management* 14(3) (2004): 183–194.
40. Johnson and Selnes proposed a typology of exchange relationships that included "strangers," "acquaintances," "friends," and "partners" and derived implications for customer portfolio management. For details, see Michael D. Johnson and Fred Selnes, "Customer Portfolio Management: Towards a Dynamic Theory of Exchange Relationships," *Journal of Marketing* 68(2) (2002): 1–17.
41. For an overview on CRM, see V. Kumar and Werner J. Reinartz, *Customer Relationship Management: A Database Approach* (Hoboken, New Jersey: John Wiley & Sons, 2006); V. Kumar, Sarang Sunder, and B. Ramaseshan, "Analyzing the Diffusion of Global Customer Relationship Management: A Cross-Regional Modeling Framework," *Journal of International Marketing* 19(1) (2011): 23–39; Barak Libai, Yakov Bart, Sonja Gensler, Charles F. Hofacker, Andreas Kaplan, Kim Kötterheinrich, and Eike Benjamin Kroll, "Brave New Word? On AI and the Management of Customer Relationships," *Journal of Interactive Marketing* 51, Issue C (2020): 44–56.
42. This section is adapted from Adrian Payne and Pennie Frow, "A Strategic Framework for Customer Relationship Management," *Journal of Marketing* 69 (October 2005): 167–176.
43. Martin Reimann, Oliver Schilke, and Jacquelyn S. Thomas, "Customer Relationship Management and Firm Performance: The Mediating Role of Business Strategy," *Journal of the Academy of Marketing Science* 38(3) (2010): 326–346. The authors found that the effect of CRM is fully mediated by the two basic strategic postures of firms: differentiation versus cost leadership. Furthermore, their study found that the effects of CRM on differentiation are stronger in highly commoditized industries than in highly differentiated industries.
44. William Boulding, Richard Staelin, Michael Ehret, and Wesley J. Johnston, "A Customer Relationship Management Roadmap: What Is Known, Potential Pitfalls, and Where to Go," *Journal of Marketing* 69(4) (2005): 155–166.
45. This section is based on Sudhir H. Kale, "CRM Failure and the Seven Deadly Sins," *Marketing Management* (September–October 2004): 42–46.
46. Boulding et al., "A Customer Relationship Management Roadmap," 155–166.
47. Darrell K. Rigby and Dianne Ledingham, "CRM Done Right," *Harvard Business Review* (November 2004): 118–129.
48. Rigby and Ledingham, "CRM Done Right": 118–129.
49. Darrell K. Rigby, Frederick F. Reichheld, and Phil Scheffer, "Avoid the Four Perils of CRM," *Harvard Business Review* (February 2002): 108.

complaint handling and

SERVICE**RECOVERY****LEARNING OBJECTIVES (LOs)**

By the end of this chapter, the reader should be able to:

- ▶ **LO 1** Recognize the actions that customers may take in response to service failures.
- ▶ **LO 2** Understand why customers complain.
- ▶ **LO 3** Know what customers expect from the firm when they complain.
- ▶ **LO 4** Understand how customers respond to effective service recovery.
- ▶ **LO 5** Explain the service recovery paradox.
- ▶ **LO 6** Know the principles of effective service recovery systems.
- ▶ **LO 7** Be familiar with the guidelines for front-line employees on how to handle complaining customers and recover from a service failure.
- ▶ **LO 8** Recognize the power of service guarantees.
- ▶ **LO 9** Understand how to design effective service guarantees.
- ▶ **LO 10** Know when firms should not offer service guarantees.
- ▶ **LO 11** Be familiar with the seven groups of jaycustomers and understand how to manage them effectively.



Mark Waugh/Alamy Stock Photo

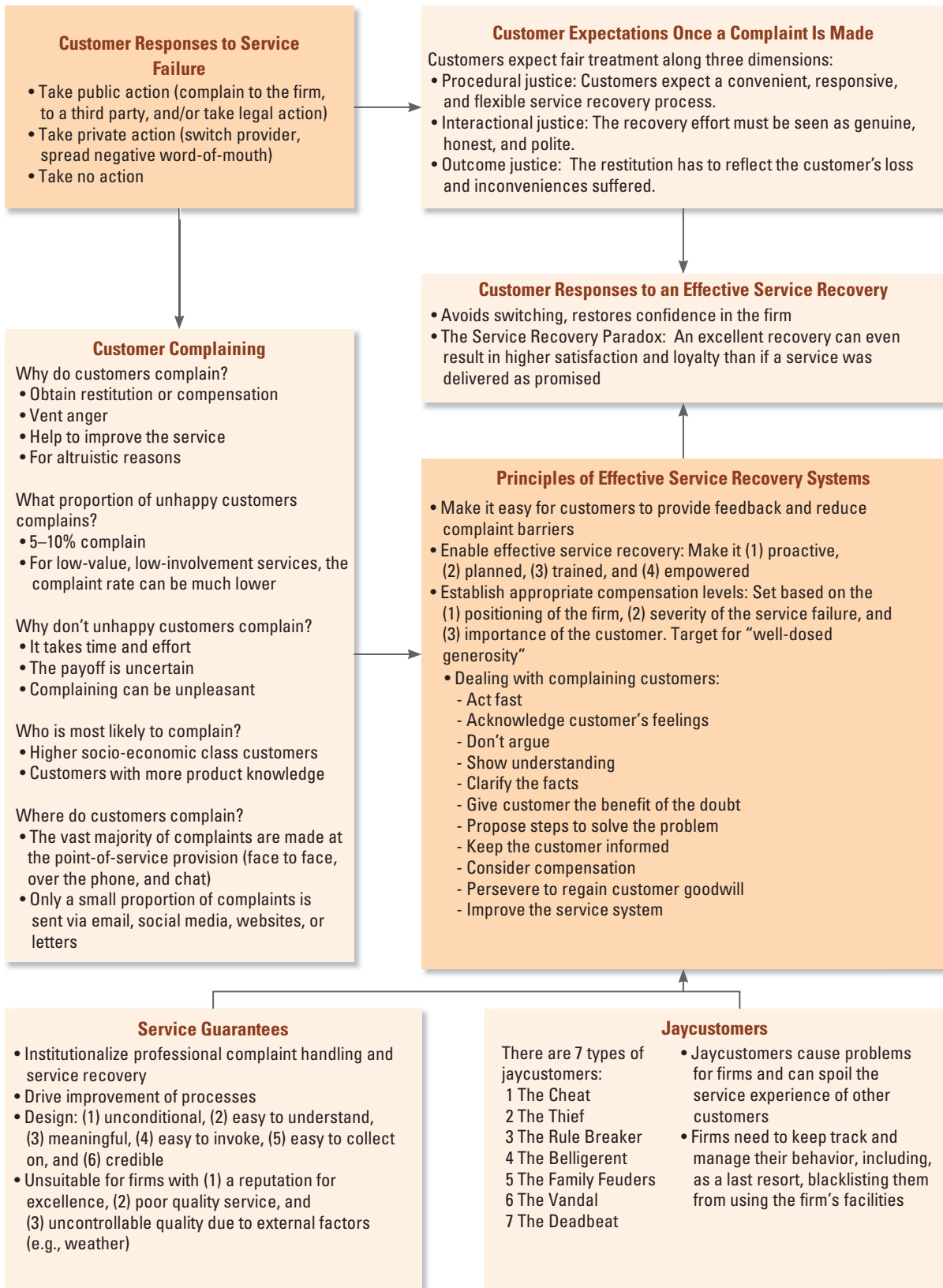


Figure 13.3 Organizing framework for managing complaints and service recovery.

CHAPTER SUMMARY

- LO 1** ▶ When customers are dissatisfied, they have several alternatives:
- o Take some form of public action (e.g., complain to the firm or a third party or even take legal action).
 - o Take some form of private action (e.g., switch to another provider and/or spread negative word of mouth).
 - o Take no action.
- LO 2** ▶ To effectively recover from a service failure, firms need to understand customer complaining behavior and motivations as well as what customers expect in response.
- o Customers typically complain for any combination of the following four reasons: (1) to obtain restitution or compensation, (2) to vent their anger, (3) to help to improve the service, and (4) to spare other customers from experiencing the same problems (i.e., they complain for altruistic reasons).
 - o In practice, most dissatisfied customers do not complain as (1) they may not know where to complain, (2) they think it requires too much effort and is unpleasant, and (3) they perceive the payoffs of their effort as uncertain.
 - o The people who are most likely to complain tend to be better educated, have higher income, are more socially involved, and have more knowledge about the product.
 - o Customers are most likely to complain at the point of service provision (face to face and over the phone). Only a small proportion of complaints is made via other channels such as e-mail, social media, websites, or letters.
- LO 3** ▶ Once customers make a complaint, they expect firms to deal with it in a fair manner along three dimensions of fairness:
- o Procedural fairness: Customers expect the firm to have a convenient, responsive, and flexible service recovery process.
 - o Interactional justice: Customers expect an honest explanation, a genuine effort to solve the problem, and polite treatment.
 - o Outcome justice: Customers expect compensation that reflects the loss and inconvenience suffered as a result of the service failure.
- LO 4** ▶ Effective service recovery can, in many cases, avoid customer switching and restore confidence in the firm. When customers complain, they give the firm a chance to correct problems, restore the relationship with the complainer, and improve future satisfaction. Service recovery is therefore an important opportunity to retain a valued customer.
- LO 5** ▶ The *service recovery paradox* describes the phenomenon where customers who experience an excellent service recovery after a failure feel even more satisfied than customers who had no problem in the first place. However, it is important to note that this paradox does not always apply. It is best to get the service right the first time rather than provide expensive service recovery.
- LO 6** ▶ Effective service recovery systems should
- o make it easy for customers to give feedback (e.g., provide hotline numbers, e-mail addresses, and social media channels on all communications materials) and encourage them to provide feedback
 - o enable effective service recovery by making it (1) proactive, (2) pre-planned, (3) trained, and (4) empowered
 - o establish appropriate compensation levels—compensation should be higher if (1) a firm is known for service excellence, (2) the service failure is serious, and (3) the customer is important to the firm.

CHAPTER SUMMARY

- ▶ **LO 7** ▶ The guidelines that front-line employees should follow to handle customer complaints and recover the service effectively include: (1) act fast; (2) acknowledge the customer's feelings; (3) don't argue with the customer; (4) show that you understand the problem from the customer's point of view; (5) clarify the truth and sort out the cause; (6) give customers the benefit of the doubt; (7) propose the steps needed to solve the problem; (8) keep customers informed of progress; (9) consider compensation; (10) persevere to regain customer goodwill; and (11) self-check the service delivery system and improve it.
- ▶ **LO 8** ▶ Service guarantees are a powerful way to institutionalize professional complaint handling and service recovery. Service guarantees set clear standards for the firm. They also reduce customers' risk perceptions and can build long-term loyalty.
- ▶ **LO 9** ▶ Service guarantees should be designed to be (1) unconditional, (2) easy to understand and communicate, (3) meaningful to the customer, (4) easy to invoke, (5) easy to collect on, and (6) credible.
- ▶ **LO 10** ▶ Not all firms stand to gain from service guarantees. Specifically, firms should be careful offering service guarantees when (1) they already have a reputation for service excellence, (2) service quality is too low and has to be improved first, (3) aspects of service quality are uncontrollable because of external factors (e.g., the weather), and (4) customers perceive low risk when buying the service.
- ▶ **LO 11** ▶ Not all customers are honest, polite, and reasonable. Some may want to take advantage of service recovery situations, while others may inconvenience and stress front-line employees and other customers. Such customers are called jaycustomers.
 - o There are seven groups of jaycustomers: (1) the Cheat, (2) the Thief, (3) the Rulebreaker, (4) the Belligerent, (5) the Family Feuders, (6) the Vandal, and (7) the Deadbeat.
 - o Different types of jaycustomers cause different problems for firms and may spoil the service experience of other customers. Hence, firms need to manage their behavior, even if that means keeping track of how often a customer invokes a service guarantee or (as a last resort) black-listing them from using the firm's facilities.

KNOW YOUR SERVICES MARKETING

Review Questions

1. How do customers typically respond to service failures?
2. Why don't many more unhappy customers complain? What do customers expect the firm to do once they have filed a complaint?
3. Why would a firm prefer its unhappy customers to come forward and complain?
4. What is the service recovery paradox? Under what conditions is this paradox most likely to hold? Why is it best to deliver the service as planned, even if the paradox does hold in a specific context?
5. How can a firm make it easy for dissatisfied customers to complain?
6. Why should a service recovery strategy be proactive, planned, trained, and empowered?
7. How generous should compensations related to service recovery be?
8. How should service guarantees be designed? What are the benefits of service guarantees over and above a good complaint handling and service recovery system?
9. Under what conditions is it not suitable to introduce a service guarantee?
10. What are the different types of jaycustomers? How can a service firm deal with such customers?

WORK YOUR SERVICES MARKETING

Application Exercises

1. Think about the last time you experienced a less-than-satisfactory service experience. Did you complain? Why? If you did not complain, explain why not.
2. When was the last time you were truly satisfied with an organization's response to your complaint? Describe in detail what happened and what made you satisfied.
3. What would be an appropriate service recovery policy for a wrongly bounced check for (a) your local savings bank, (b) a major national bank, and (c) a private bank for high net-worth individuals? Please explain your rationale and also compute the economic costs of the alternative service recovery policies.
4. Design an effective service guarantee for a service with high perceived risk. Explain (a) why and how your guarantee would reduce perceived risk of potential customers and (b) why current customers would appreciate being offered this guarantee although they are already a customer of that firm and therefore are likely to perceive lower levels of risk.
5. How generous should compensation be? Review the following incident and comment. Then evaluate the available options, comment on each, select the one you recommend, and defend your decision.

"The shrimp cocktail was half frozen. The waitress apologized and didn't charge me for my dinner," was the response of a very satisfied customer about the service recovery he received. Consider the following range of service recovery policies a restaurant chain could set, and try to establish the costs for each policy:

Option 1: Smile and apologize, defrost the prawn cocktail, return it, and smile and apologize again.

Option 2: Smile and apologize, replace the prawn cocktail with a new one, and smile and apologize again.

Option 3: Smile and apologize, replace the prawn cocktail, and offer a free coffee or dessert.

Option 4: Smile and apologize, replace the prawn cocktail, and waive the bill of \$80 for the entire meal.

Option 5: Smile and apologize, replace the prawn cocktail, and offer a voucher of \$80 for another dinner to be redeemed within three months.
6. Identify the possible behavior of jaycustomers for a service of your choice. How can the service process be designed to minimize or control the behavior of jaycustomers?

Endnotes

1. "An Extraordinary Stumble at JetBlue," *Business Week*, March 5, 2007, <http://www.bloomberg.com/bw/stories/2007-03-04/an-extraordinary-stumble-at-jetblue>, accessed March 16, 2022.

2. Roger Bougie, Rik Pieters, and Marcel Zeelenberg, "Angry Customers Don't Come Back, They Get Back: The Experience and Behavioral Implications of

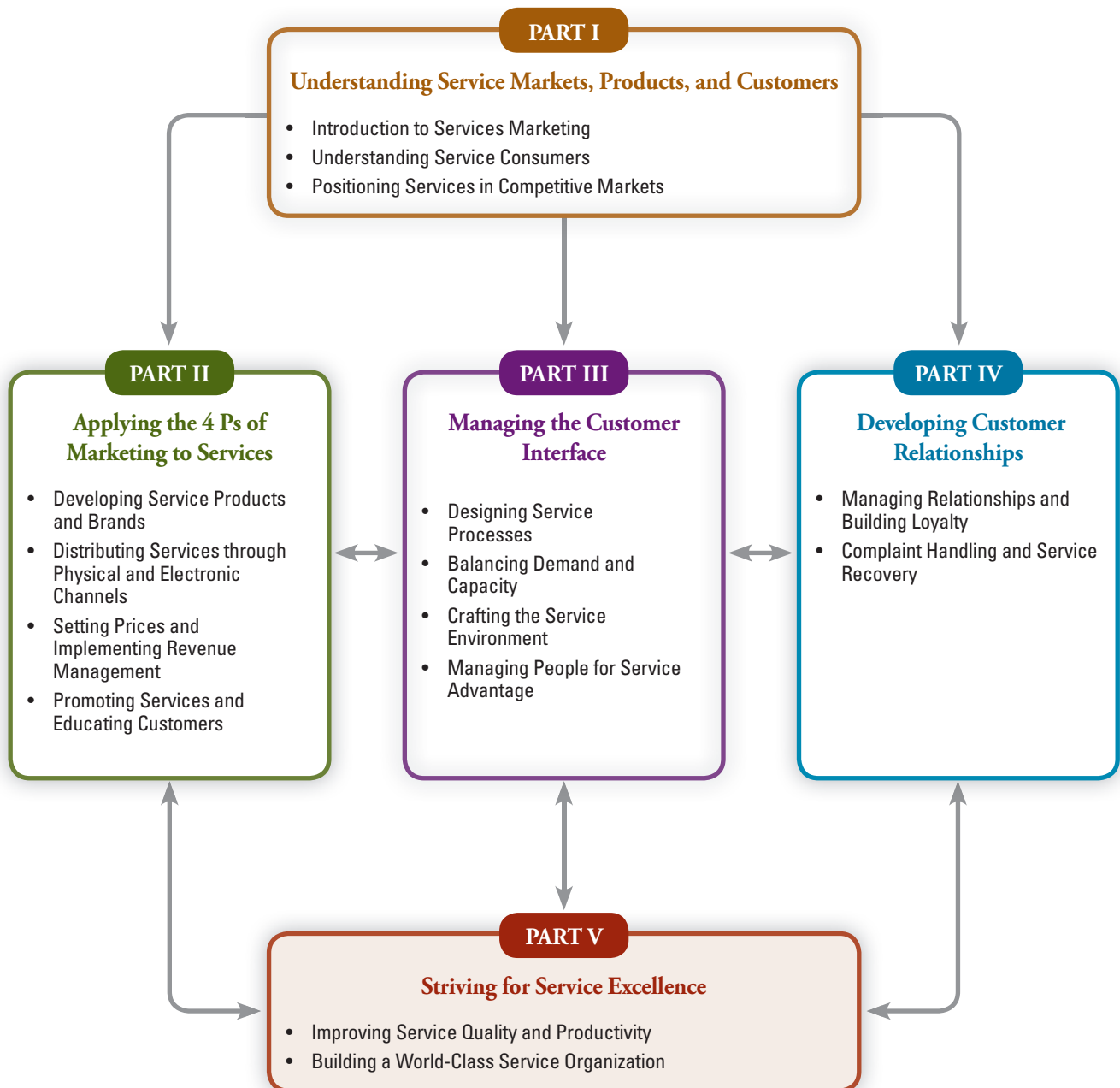
Anger and Dissatisfaction in Service," *Journal of the Academy of Marketing Science* 31(4) (2003): 377–393; Florian V. Wangenheim, "Postswitching Negative Word of Mouth," *Journal of Service Research* 8(1) (2005): 67–78.

3. Stephen S. Tax and Stephen W. Brown, "Recovering and Learning from Service Failure," *Sloan Management Review* 49(1) (Fall 1998): 75–88.

4. Jean-Charles Chebat, Moshe Davidow, and Isabelle Codjovi, "Silent Voices: Why Some Dissatisfied Consumers Fail to Complain," *Journal of Service Research* 7(4) (2005): 328–342; Nancy Stephens and Kevin P. Gwinner, "Why Don't Some People Complain? A Cognitive-Emotive Process Model of Consumer Complaining Behavior," *Journal of the Academy of Marketing Science* 26(3) (1998): 172–189; Kelli Bodey and Debra Grace, "Segmenting Service 'Complainers' and 'Non-Complainers' on the Basis of Consumer Characters," *Journal of Services Marketing* 20(3) (2006): 178–187.
5. Nancy Stephens, "Complaining," in Teresa A. Swartz and Dawn Iacobucci (eds.), *Handbook of Services Marketing and Management* (Thousand Oaks, California: Sage Publications, 2000), p. 291; Alex M. Susskind, "Communication Richness: Why Some Guest Complaints Go Right to the Top—and Others Don't," *Cornell Hospitality Quarterly* 56(3) (2015): 320–331.
6. John Goodman, "Basic Facts on Customer Complaint Behavior and the Impact of Service on the Bottom Line," *Competitive Advantage* (June 1999): 1–5.
7. Anna Mattila and Jochen Wirtz, "Consumer Complaining to Firms: The Determinants of Channel Choice," *Journal of Services Marketing* 18(2) (2004): 147–155; Kaisa Snellman and Tiina Vihtkari, "Customer Complaining Behavior in Technology-Based Service Encounters," *International Journal of Service Industry Management* 14(2) (2003): 217–231; Terri Shapiro and Jennifer Nieman-Gonder, "Effect of Communication Mode in Justice-Based Service Recovery," *Managing Service Quality* 16(2) (2006): 124–144.
8. Thomas M. Tripp and Yany Gregoire, "When Unhappy Customers Strike Back on the Internet," *MIT Sloan Management Review* 52(3) (Spring 2011): 37–44; Sven Tuzovic, "Frequent (Flier) Frustration and the Dark Side of Word-of-Web: Exploring Online Dysfunctional Behavior in Online Feedback Forums," *Journal of Services Marketing* 24(6) (2010): 446–457.
9. Tax and Brown, "Recovering and Learning from Service Failure": 75–88. For meta-analyses and reviews of the effects of fairness on consumer responses, see Chiara Orsingher, Sara Valentini, and Matteo de Angelis, "A Meta-Analysis of Satisfaction with Complaint Handling in Services," *Journal of the Academy of Marketing Science* 38(2) (2010): 169–186; Katja Gelbrich and Holger Roschk, "A Meta-Analysis of Organisational Complaint Handling and Customer Responses," *Journal of Service Research* 14(1) (2011): 24–43.
10. Oren Harari, "Thank Heavens for Complainers," *Management Review* (March 1997): 25–29.
11. Tom DeWitt, Doan T. Nguyen, and Roger Marshall, "Exploring Customer Loyalty Following Service Recovery," *Journal of Service Research* 10(3) (2008): 269–281.
12. Simon J. Bell and James A. Luddington, "Coping with Customer Complaints," *Journal of Service Research* 8(3) (February 2006): 221–233.
13. Technical Assistance Research Programs Institute (TARP), *Consumer Complaint Handling in America: An Update Study, Part II* (Washington DC: TARP and U.S. Office of Consumer Affairs, April 1986). Since this study, Customer Care Measurement & Consulting (CCMC) and the W.P. Carey School of Business, Arizona State University (ASU), have conducted follow-on studies, known as the "Customer Rage Studies," to explore important, emerging trends in customer complaining behavior and service recovery. For highlights of the latest study, "The 2020 Customer Rage Study," see <https://research.wpcarey.asu.edu/services-leadership/research/research-initiatives/customer-rage/>, accessed on March 16, 2022.
14. For a comprehensive treatment of all aspects of effective complaint management, see Bernd Stauss and Wolfgang Seidel, *Complaint Management: The Heart of CRM* (Mason, Ohio: Thomson, 2004), and Janelle Barlow and Claus Möller, *A Complaint Is a Gift*, 2nd edition (San Francisco, CA: Berrett-Koehler Publishers, 2008).
15. Celso Augusto de Matos, Jorge Luiz Henrique, and Carlos Alberto Vargas Rossi, "Service Recovery Paradox: A Meta-Analysis," *Journal of Service Research* 10(1) (2007): 60–77; Randi Priluck and Vishal Lala, "The Impact of the Recovery Paradox on Retailer–Customer Relationships," *Managing Service Quality* 19(1) (2009): 42–59.
16. Stefan Michel and Matthew L. Meuter, "The Service Recovery Paradox: True but Overrated?" *International Journal of Service Industry Management* 19(4) (2008): 441–457.
17. James G. Maxham III and Richard G. Netemeyer, "A Longitudinal Study of Complaining Customers' Evaluations of Multiple Service Failures and Recovery Efforts," *Journal of Marketing* 66(4) (2002): 57–72.
18. Michael Hargrove, cited in Ron Kaufman, *Up Your Service!* (Singapore: Ron Kaufman Plc. Ltd., 2005), p. 225.
19. Tax and Brown, "Recovering and Learning from Service Failure": 75–88; Stephen S. Tax, Stephen W. Brown, and Murali Chandrashekar, "Customer Evaluation of Service Complaint Experiences: Implications for Relationship Marketing," *Journal of Marketing* 62(2) (Spring 1998): 60–76.
20. Christian Homburg and Andreas Fürst, "How Organizational Complaint Handling Drives Customer Loyalty: An Analysis of the Mechanistic and the Organic Approach," *Journal of Marketing* 69 (July 2005): 95–114.
21. Josh Bernoff and Ted Schadler, "Empowered," *Harvard Business Review* (July–August 2010): 95–101.
22. Rhonda Mack, Rene Mueller, John Crofts, and Amanda Broderick, "Perceptions, Corrections and Defections: Implications for Service Recovery in the Restaurant Industry," *Managing Service Quality* 10(6) (2000): 339–346.
23. Matthew Dixon, Karen Freeman, and Nicholas Toman, "Stop Trying to Delight Your Customers: To Really Win Their Loyalty, Forget the Bells and Whistles and Just Solve Their Problems," *Harvard Business Review* 88(7–8) (2010): 116–122.
24. Yves Van Vaerenbergh, Dorotya Varga, Arne De Keyser, and Chiara Orsingher, "The Service Recovery Journey: Conceptualization, Integration, and Directions for Further Research," *Journal of Service Research* 22(2) (2019): 103–119.
25. For an excellent review of extant academic literature on service guarantees, see Jens Hogueve and Dwayne D. Gremler, "Twenty Years of Service Guarantee Research," *Journal of Service Research* 11(4) (2009): 322–343. For an integrative model of the impacts of a service guarantee on customers and the firm, see Jochen Wirtz, "Development of a Service Guarantee Model," *Asia Pacific Journal of Management* 15(1) (1998): 51–75.
26. Christopher W.L. Hart, "The Power of Unconditional Service Guarantees," *Harvard Business Review* (July–August 1988): 54–62.
27. L.A. Tucci and J. Talaga, "Service Guarantees and Consumers' Evaluation of Services," *Journal of Services Marketing* 11(1) (1997): 10–18; Amy Ostrom and Dawn Iacobucci, "The Effect of Guarantees on Consumers' Evaluation of Services," *Journal of Services Marketing* 12(5) (1998): 362–378.
28. Hart, "The Power of Unconditional Service Guarantees": 55–56.
29. Gordon H. McDougall, Terence Levesque, and Peter VanderPlaat, "Designing the Service Guarantee: Unconditional or Specific?" *Journal of Services Marketing* 12(4) (1998): 278–293; Jochen Wirtz, "Development of a Service Guarantee Model," *Asia Pacific Journal of Management* 15(1) (1998): 51–75.
30. Jochen Wirtz and Doreen Kum, "Designing Service Guarantees: Is Full Satisfaction the Best You Can Guarantee?," *Journal of Services Marketing* 15(4) (2001): 282–299.
31. Amy L. Ostrom and Christopher Hart, "Service Guarantee: Research and Practice," in T. Schwartz and D. Iacobucci (eds.), *Handbook of Services Marketing and Management* (Thousand Oaks, California: Sage Publications, 2000), pp. 299–316; Jochen Wirtz, Doreen Kum, and Khai Sheang Lee, "Should a Firm with a Reputation for Outstanding Service Quality Offer a Service Guarantee?," *Journal of Services Marketing* 14(6) (2000): 502–512.
32. This section is adapted and updated from Christopher Lovelock, Chapter 15, in *Product Plus* (New York: McGraw-Hill, 1994). For an additional discussion of jaycustomers, see Leonard L. Berry and Kathleen Seiders, "Serving Unfair Customers," *Business Horizons* 51(1) (2008): 29–37.
33. Kate L. Reynolds and Lloyd C. Harris, "When Service Failure Is Not Service Failure: An Exploration of the Forms and Motives of 'Illegitimate' Customer Complaining," *Journal of Services Marketing* 19(5) (2005): 326.
34. Kate L. Reynolds and Lloyd C. Harris, "Jaycustomer Behavior: An Exploration of Types and Motives in the Hospitality Industry," *Journal of Services Marketing* 18(5) (2004): 339.
35. Jill Griffin, "What Your Worst Customers Teach You about Loyalty," *MarketingProfs* (January 24, 2006), <http://www.marketingprofs.com/6/griffin5.asp>, accessed March 16, 2022.
36. Jochen Wirtz and Doreen Kum, "Consumer Cheating on Service Guarantees," *Journal of the Academy of Marketing Science* 32(2) (2004): 159–175; Jochen Wirtz and Janet R. McColl-Kennedy, "Opportunistic Customer Claiming During Service Recovery," *Journal of the Academy of Marketing Science* 38 (2010): 654–675.
37. Anthony Dukes and Yi Zhu, "Why Customer Service Frustrates Customers: Using a Tiered Organizational Structure to Exploit Hassle Costs," *Marketing Science* 38(3) (2019): 500–515.



THE *ESM* FRAMEWORK



Striving for Service Excellence

Part V focuses on service quality and productivity as well as how firms can achieve service leadership. It consists of the following two chapters:



Chapter 14 Improving Service Quality and Productivity

Both productivity and quality are necessary and related to financial success in services. Chapter 14 covers diagnosing quality shortfalls using the gaps model and reviewing strategies to close quality gaps. Customer feedback systems are introduced as an effective tool for systematically listening to and learning from customers. Productivity is concerned with bringing down costs, and key approaches for increasing productivity are discussed.

Chapter 15 Building a Service Organization That Wins

Chapter 15 opens with a discussion on the impact of customer satisfaction on financial performance and shareholder value. Furthermore, it covers the characteristics of world-class service organizations and introduces four levels of service performance (i.e., service loser, nonentity, professional, and service leader). An audit tool is provided that helps to assess the performance level of an organization. We discuss how to move a service organization to higher levels of performance. The chapter closes with a discussion of the three strategic pathways toward achieving cost-effective service excellence.

improving

SERVICE QUALITY and PRODUCTIVITY

LEARNING OBJECTIVES (LOs)

By the end of this chapter, the reader should be able to:

- ▶ **LO 1** Explain the relationships between service quality, productivity, and profitability.
- ▶ **LO 2** Be familiar with the different perspectives of service quality.
- ▶ **LO 3** Demonstrate how to use the Gaps Model for diagnosing and addressing service quality problems.
- ▶ **LO 4** Differentiate between hard and soft measures of service quality.
- ▶ **LO 5** Explain the common objectives of effective customer feedback systems.
- ▶ **LO 6** Describe key customer feedback collection tools.
- ▶ **LO 7** Be familiar with hard measures of service quality and control charts.
- ▶ **LO 8** Select suitable tools to analyze service problems.
- ▶ **LO 9** Understand return on quality and determine the optimal level of reliability.
- ▶ **LO 10** Define and measure service productivity.
- ▶ **LO 11** Understand the difference between productivity, efficiency, and effectiveness.
- ▶ **LO 12** Recommend the key methods to improve service productivity.
- ▶ **LO 13** Know how productivity improvements impact quality and value.
- ▶ **LO 14** Understand how to integrate all the tools to improve the quality and productivity of customer service processes.
- ▶ **LO 15** Explain how TQM, ISO 9000, Six Sigma, and the Malcolm Baldrige and EFQM approaches relate to managing and improving service quality and productivity.

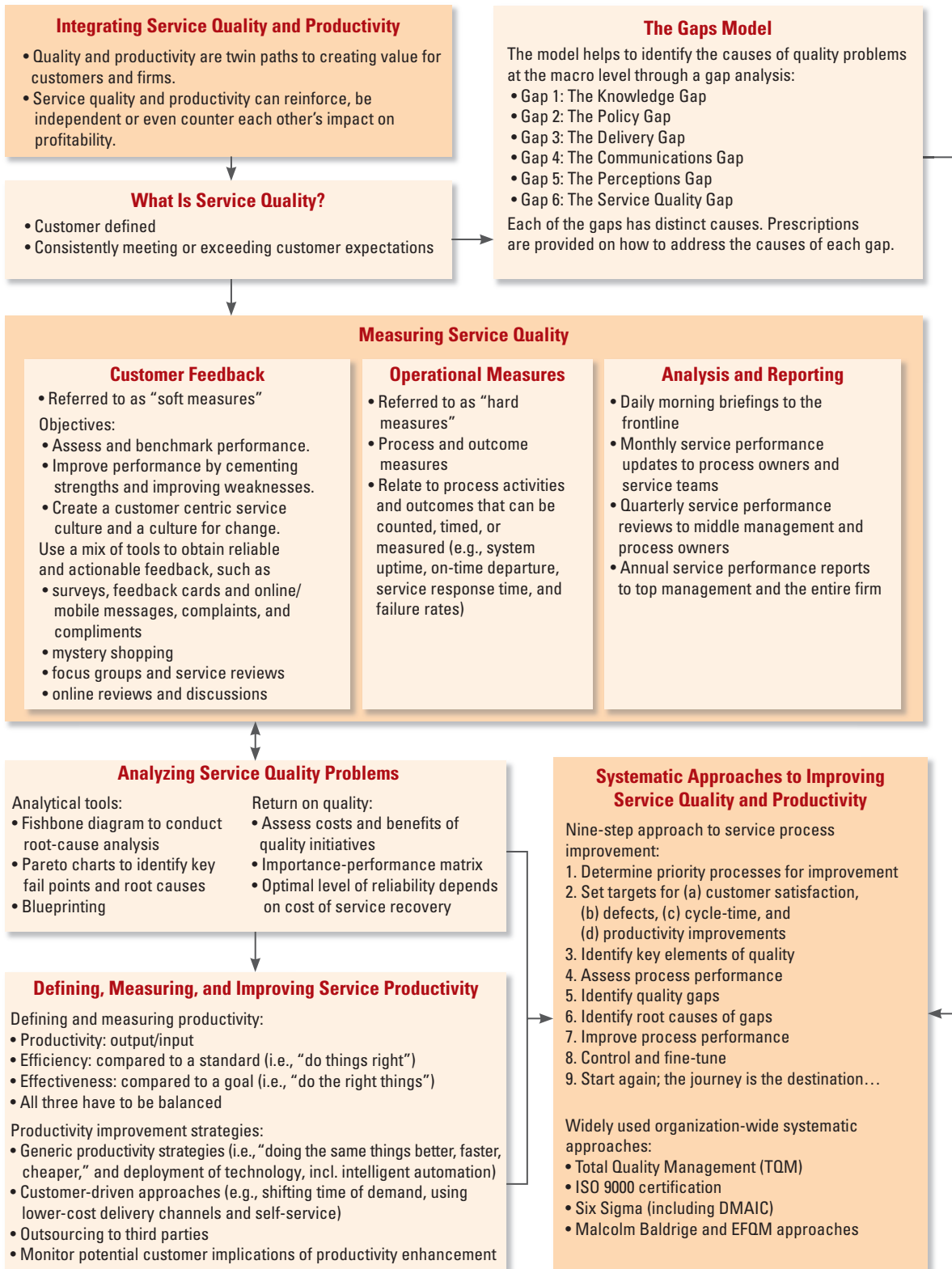


Figure 14.1 Improving service quality and productivity.

CHAPTER SUMMARY


- LO 1** ▶ Quality and productivity are twin paths for creating value for customers and the firm. However, the relationship between productivity and customer satisfaction (and the net effects on profitability) can be positive, neutral, or negative and therefore needs to be managed carefully.
- LO 2** ▶ There are different definitions of service quality. In this book, we adopt the customer-focused definition of service quality as consistently meeting or exceeding customer expectations.
- LO 3** ▶ The Gaps Model is an important tool to diagnose and address service quality problems. We identified six gaps that can be the cause of quality shortfalls:
1. Gap 1—the knowledge gap
 2. Gap 2—the policy gap
 3. Gap 3—the delivery gap
 4. Gap 4—the communications gap
 5. Gap 5—the perceptions gap
 6. Gap 6—the service quality gap (this is the most important gap; in order to close Gap 6, the other five gaps have to be closed first)
- We summarized a series of potential causes for each of the gaps and provided generic prescriptions for addressing these causes and thereby closing the gaps. These prescriptions take a holistic organization perspective.
- LO 4** ▶ There are both soft and hard measures of service quality. *Soft measures* are usually based on perceptions of and feedback from customers and employees. *Hard measures* relate to processes and their outcomes.
- LO 5** ▶ Feedback from customers (i.e., mostly soft measures) should be systematically collected via a customer feedback system (CFS). The key objectives of a CFS include
1. assessment and benchmarking of service quality and performance
 2. customer-driven learning and improvement
 3. creating a customer-oriented service culture and a culture of change
- LO 6** ▶
- o Firms can use a variety of tools to collect customer feedback, including (1) total market surveys, (2) annual customer satisfaction surveys, (3) transactional surveys, (4) automated rating systems such as those based on apps and messaging, (5) unsolicited customer feedback (e.g., compliments and complaints), (6) online reviews and discussions on third-party (social) media, (7) mystery shopping, (8) focus group discussions, and (9) service reviews.
 - o A reporting system is needed to channel feedback and its analysis to the relevant parties so that they may take action.
- LO 7** ▶ *Hard measures* relate to operational processes and outcomes and can be counted, timed, or observed. *Control charts* are a simple method of displaying performance on hard measures over time against specific quality standards.
- LO 8** ▶ Key tools to analyze and address service quality problems include the following:
1. *Fishbone diagrams* to identify the root causes of quality problems
 2. *Pareto analysis* to assess the frequency of quality problems and identify the most common causes
 3. *Blueprinting* to determine the exact location of fail points in a customer service journey and then help to redesign the process
- LO 9** ▶ There are financial implications of service quality improvements. A return-on-quality (ROQ) approach assesses the costs and benefits of specific quality initiatives. Firms should increase service reliability up to the point at which the incremental improvement equals the cost of service recovery (which is the actual cost of failure). When a service failure occurs, customers should receive a satisfying service recovery.
- LO 10** ▶ Productivity measures the amount of output produced relative to the amount of inputs used. An improvement in this ratio can be achieved by cutting the resources required to create a given volume of output or by increasing the output obtained from a given level of input. Key inputs vary according to the industry and can include labor, materials, energy, and assets.
- LO 11** ▶ It is important to differentiate between these three concepts:
1. Productivity involves the amount of outputs based on a given level of inputs (e.g., input/output ratio).
 2. Efficiency is usually time-based and compared to a standard such as industry average (e.g., speed of delivery).
 3. Effectiveness refers to the degree to which a firm meets its goals (such as customer satisfaction).
- Productivity and efficiency cannot be separated from effectiveness. Firms that strive to be more productive, efficient, and effective in consistently delivering customer satisfaction will be more successful.
- LO 12** ▶ Generic methods to improve productivity include
1. controlling costs in every step of the process
 2. reducing waste of materials and labor
 3. training employees to work more productively
 4. broadening the job scope of employees to reduce bottlenecks and downtime


CHAPTER SUMMARY

5. redesigning customer service processes to be more productive and effective (e.g., through lean Six Sigma)
6. using machines, equipment, technology, intelligent automation, and analytics that enable employees to work faster or to a higher level of quality
7. installing expert systems so that paraprofessionals can do the work previously done by higher-paid experts
8. replacing service employees with machines, intelligent automation, service robots, and customer-operated self-service technologies (SSTs)
9. tiering service levels to allocate resources better to more important customers.
10. improving capacity utilization
11. outsourcing non-core activities that can be provided more cost-effectively by third parties

Customer-driven methods to improve productivity include


1. changing the timing of customer demand to better match demand to capacity
2. encouraging the use of lower-cost service delivery channels and replacing labor with machines, service robots, and SSTs
3. getting customers to use more cost-effective third parties for parts of the service delivery

 **LO 13** ▶ While making improvements to productivity, firms need to bear in mind that both front-stage and back-stage improvements can have an impact on service quality and the customer experience.

 **LO 14** ▶ A nine-step approach can be used to improve customer service processes:

1. Determine priority processes for improvement (e.g., through a frequency count of process occurrence and number of complaints and the use of the prioritization matrix).

2. Set targets for customer satisfaction, defects, cycle time, and productivity improvements (e.g., through benchmarking and a project charter).
3. Identify key elements of quality (e.g., through blueprinting to identify touch points and the use of the five dimensions of quality together with customer and employee feedback to understand what quality means in the eyes of the customer).
4. Assess process performance (e.g., through hard operational measures and soft customer feedback measures).
5. Identify performance shortfalls and quality gaps (e.g., map customer needs and wants against process performance; map frequency count of service failures on service blueprints to understand where exactly service processes fail).
6. Identify root causes of gaps (e.g., use the Gaps Model to capture all possible sources of gaps; use TQM tools such as the fishbone diagram, Pareto charts, and service blueprints to drill down to specific gaps).
7. Improve process performance (e.g., use the prescriptions of the Gaps Model to close quality shortfalls; use customer service process redesign tools as discussed in Chapter 8 and plans for service recovery as covered in Chapter 13).
8. Control and fine tune (i.e., monitor the performance of the redesigned process and fine tune it further).
9. Start again, the journey is the destination...

 **LO 15** ▶ TQM, ISO 9000, Six Sigma, Malcolm Baldrige, and European Foundation for Quality Management (EFQM) are systematic and complementary approaches to managing and improving service quality and productivity. They integrate many of the tools discussed in this chapter.

Endnotes

1. Adapted from Audrey Gilmore, "Service Marketing Management Competencies: A Ferry Company Example," *International Journal of Service Industry Management* 9(1) (1998): 74–92; www.stenaline.com, accessed November 23, 2020; "Stena Line," Wikipedia, https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Stena_Line, accessed March 21, 2022.
2. This section was adapted from Jochen Wirtz and Valarie Zeithaml, "Cost-Effective Service Excellence," *Journal of the Academy of Marketing Science* 46(1) (2018): 59–80; and Jochen Wirtz, Chapter 14, "Strategic Pathways to Cost-Effective Service Excellence," in Eileen Bridges and Kendra Fowler (eds.), *The Routledge Handbook of Service Research Insights and Ideas* (Abingdon-on-Thames, UK: Routledge, 2020), pp. 423–440.
3. A. Parasuraman, Valarie A. Zeithaml, and Leonard L. Berry, "A Conceptual Model of Service Quality and Its Implications for Future Research," *Journal of Marketing* 49 (Fall 1985): 41–50; Valarie A. Zeithaml, Leonard L. Berry, and A. Parasuraman, "Communication and Control Processes in the Delivery of Services," *Journal of Marketing* 52 (April 1988): 36–58.
4. The sub-gaps in this model are based on the 7-gaps model in Christopher Lovelock, *Product Plus: How Product + Service = Competitive Advantage* (New York: McGraw-Hill, 1994), p. 112.
5. This section is based partially on Jochen Wirtz and Monica Tomlin, "Institutionalizing Customer-Driven Learning through Fully Integrated Customer Feedback Systems," *Managing Service Quality* 10(4) (2000): 205–215.
6. W.E. Baker and J.M. Sinkula, "The Synergistic Effect of Market Orientation and Learning Orientation on Organizational Performance," *Journal of the Academy of Marketing Science* 27(4) (1999): 411–427.
7. Leonard L. Berry and A. Parasuraman provide an excellent overview of all key research approaches discussed in this section plus a number of other tools in their paper, "Listening to the Customer: The Concept of a Service Quality Information System," *Sloan Management Review* 38 (Spring 1997): 65–76.
8. For a discussion on suitable satisfaction measures, see Jochen Wirtz and Lee Meng Chung, "An Examination of the Quality and Context-Specific Applicability of Commonly Used Customer Satisfaction Measures," *Journal of Service Research* 5 (May 2003): 345–355.
9. Maria Holmlund, Yves Van Vaerenbergh, Robert Ciuchita, Annika Ravald, Panagiotis Sarantopoulos, Francisco Villarreal Ordenes, and Mohamed Zaki, "Customer Experience Management in the Age of Big Data Analytics: A Strategic Framework," *Journal of Business Research* 116 (August 2020): 356–365; Hsiu-Yuan Tsao, Ming-Yi Chen, Colin Campbell, and Sean Sands, "Estimating Numerical Scale Ratings from Text-Based Service Reviews," *Journal of Service Management* 31(2) (2020): 187–202.
10. Duncan Simester, "When You Shouldn't Listen to Your Critics," *Harvard Business Review* 89(6) (2011): 42.
11. Saram Han and Chris K. Anderson, "Customer Motivation and Response Bias in Online Reviews," *Cornell Hospitality Quarterly* 61(2) (2020): 142–153; Xia Liu, "A Big Data Approach to Examining Social Bots on Twitter," *Journal of Services Marketing* 33(4) (2019): 369–379.
12. Comments by Thomas R. Oliver, then senior vice president, sales and customer service, Federal Express, as reported in Christopher H. Lovelock, *Federal Express: Quality Improvement Program* (Lausanne: International Institute for Management Development, 1990).
13. These categories and the research data that follow have been adapted from information in D. Daryl Wyckoff, "New Tools for Achieving Service Quality," *Cornell Hotel and Restaurant Administration Quarterly* (August–September 2001): 25–38.
14. Roland T. Rust, Anthony J. Zahonik, and Timothy L. Keiningham, "Return on Quality (ROQ): Making Service Quality Financially Accountable," *Journal of Marketing* 59 (April 1995): 58–70; Roland T. Rust, Christine Moorman, and Peter R. Dickson, "Getting Return on Quality: Revenue Expansion, Cost Reduction, or Both?," *Journal of Marketing* 66 (October 2002): 7–24.
15. Marginal utility analysis was found to outperform analyses based on importance-performance and regression analyses; see Donald R. Bacon, "Understanding Priorities for Service Attribute Improvement," *Journal of Service Research* 15(2) (2012): 199–214.
16. Martin Neil Baily, Diana Farrell, and Jaana Remes, "Where U.S. Productivity Is Growing," *McKinsey Quarterly* 2 (2006): 10–12.
17. Kenneth J. Klassen, Randolph M. Russell, and James J. Chrisman, "Efficiency and Productivity Measures for High Contact Services," *Service Industries Journal* 18 (October 1998): 1–18. For a review and discussion on service productivity, see Christian Grönroos and Katri Ojasalo, "Service Productivity: Towards a Conceptualization of the Transformation of Inputs into Economic Results in Services," *Journal of Business Research* 57(4) (2004): 414–423.
18. For a more in-depth discussion on service productivity, refer to Cynthia Karen Swank, "The Lean Service Machine," *Harvard Business Review* 81(10) (2003): 123–129.
19. For further reading on intelligent automation and service robots, see Pascal Bornet, Ian Barkin, and Jochen Wirtz, *Intelligent Automation—Learn How to Harness Artificial Intelligence to Boost Business & Make Our World More Human* (2021), <https://intelligentautomationbook.com>; Jochen Wirtz, Paul Patterson, Werner Kunz, Thorsten Gruber, Vinh Nhat Lu, Stefanie Paluch, and Antje Martins, "Brave New World: Service Robots in the Frontline," *Journal of Service Management* 29(5) (2018): 907–931, <https://doi.org/10.1108/JOSM-04-2018-0119>.
20. C. Mele and M. Colurcio, "The Evolving Path of TQM: Towards Business Excellence and Stakeholder Value," *International Journal of Quality and Reliability Management* 23(5) (2006): 464–489; C. Mele, "The Synergic Relationship between TQM and Marketing in Creating Customer Value," *Managing Service Quality* 17(3) (2007): 240–258.
21. See the official website of the International Organization for Standardization (ISO) for detailed information on ISO: <http://www.iso.org>. The ISO 9000 family of standards is described at <https://www.iso.org/iso-9001-quality-management.html>, and an introduction is provided in the following publication: ISO Central Secretariat, *Selection and Use of the ISO 9000 Family of Standards* (2016), ISBN: 978-92-67-10656-4 (this book can be downloaded for free from the ISO 9000 website at <https://www.iso.org/files/live/sites/isoorg/files/store/en/PUB100208.pdf>, accessed March 21, 2022).
22. Jim Biolos, "Six Sigma Meets the Service Economy," *Harvard Business Review* 80 (November 2002): 3–5. For a literature review of the use of Lean Six Sigma in service organizations, see Vijaya Sunder M., L.S. Ganesh, and Rahul Marathe, "A Morphological Analysis of Research Literature on Lean Six Sigma for Services," *International Journal of Operations & Production Management* 38(1) (2018): 149–182.
23. The official website for the Malcolm Baldrige Award is <https://www.nist.gov/baldrige>. The official website for the European Foundation for Quality Management (EFQM) is <https://www.efqm.org/>, and an overview of the EFQM model is provided at <https://www.efqm.org/index.php/efqm-model/download-your-free-short-copy-of-the-efqm-model/>, all accessed on March 21, 2022.
24. Allan Shirks, William B. Weeks, and Annie Stein, "Baldrige-Based Quality Awards: Veterans Health Administration's 3-Year Experience," *Quality Management in Health Care* 10(3) (2002): 47–54; National Institute of Standards and Technology, "Baldrige FAQs," http://www.nist.gov/baldrige/about/baldrige_faqs.cfm, accessed September 1, 2015.
25. Cathy A. Enz and Judy A. Siguaw, "Best Practices in Service Quality," *Cornell Hotel and Restaurant Administration Quarterly* (October 2000): 20–29.
26. Eight NIST Stock Investment Study (Gaithersburg, USA: National Institute of Standards and Technology, March 2002).
27. Gavin Dick, Kevin Gallimore, and Jane C. Brown, "ISO 9000 and Quality Emphasis: An Empirical Study of Front-Room and Back-Room Dominated Service Industries," *International Journal of Service Industry Management* 12(2) (2001): 114–136; Adrian Hughes and David N. Halsall, "Comparison of the 14 Deadly Diseases and the Business Excellence Model," *Total Quality Management* 13(2) (2002): 255–263.

building a world-class

**SERVICE
ORGANIZATION****LEARNING OBJECTIVES (LOs)**

By the end of this chapter, the reader should be able to:

- ▶ **LO 1** Know the long-term impact of customer-centricity on profitability and shareholder value.
- ▶ **LO 2** Know the relationship between relative customer satisfaction and share-of-wallet, and be familiar with the Wallet Allocation Rule.
- ▶ **LO 3** Know the characteristics of world-class service organizations and be familiar with the four levels of service performance.
- ▶ **LO 4** Understand what is required for transforming a service firm from a service loser to a service leader.
- ▶ **LO 5** Be familiar with the three strategic pathways that allow organizations to achieve cost-effective service excellence (CESE).
- ▶ **LO 6** Know the dual-culture strategy of CESE and its implementation challenges.
- ▶ **LO 7** Be familiar with the operations management approach for achieving CESE.
- ▶ **LO 8** Appreciate the focused service factory strategy that allows a relatively easy way of implementing CESE.
- ▶ **LO 9** Understand business model considerations related to the pathways toward CESE.



INTRODUCTION

You are almost at the end of this book and presumably also at the tail end of your services marketing course. In this final chapter, we integrate many of the topics you have studied and provide you with a summary of what a world-class service organization looks like. We also discuss the financial impact of being a service leader and three strategic pathways towards achieving cost-effective service excellence. See Figure 15.1 for an overview. The chapter closes with a call to action on your part!

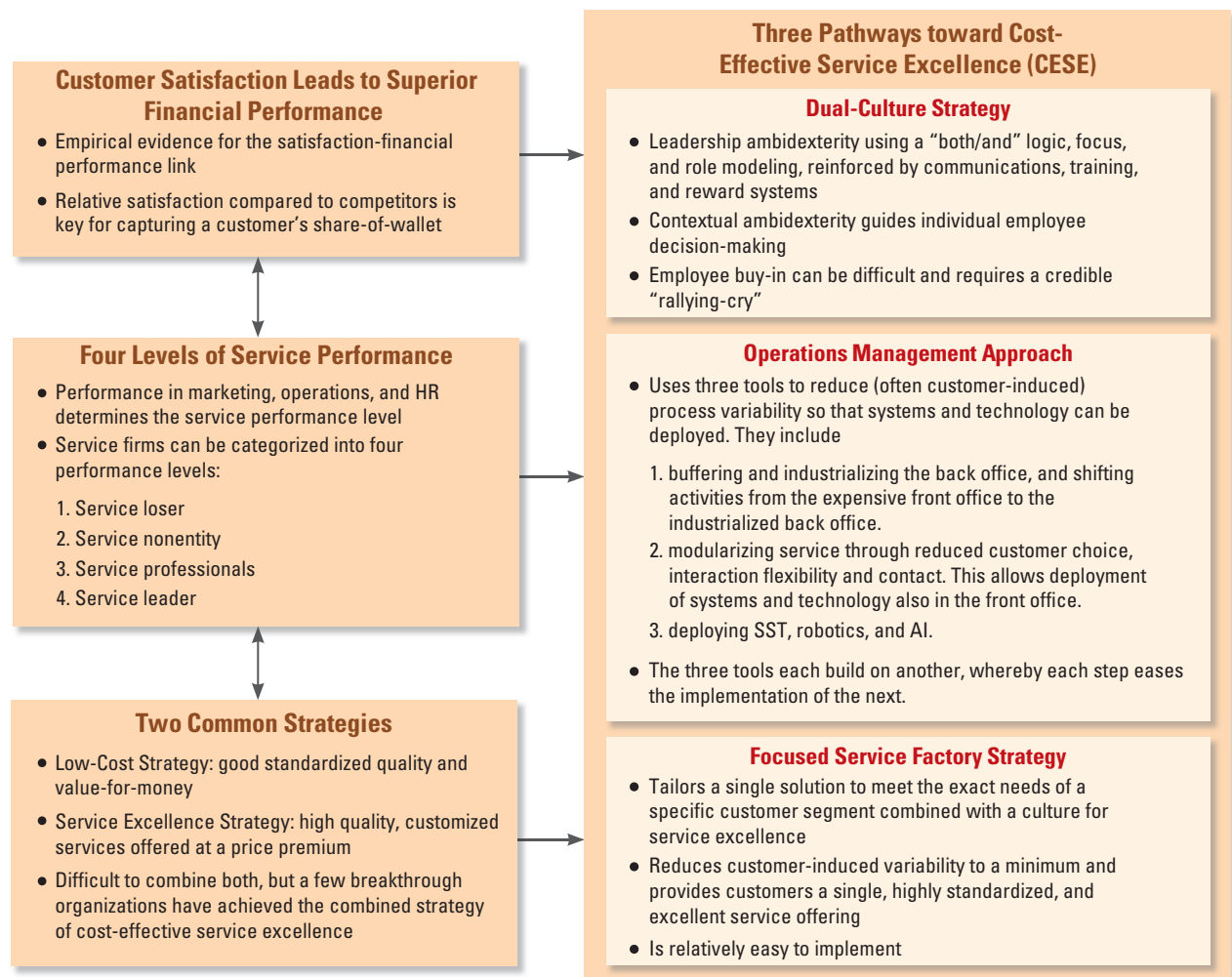


Figure 15.1 Paths toward becoming a breakthrough service organization.

CHAPTER SUMMARY

LO 1 ▶ A service leader's adoption of a long-term perspective and customer-centricity pays off financially. There is solid empirical evidence that high customer satisfaction (compared to an organization's peer group) leads to superior financial returns.

LO 2 ▶ It is not the absolute satisfaction score but the relative rating that determines a customer's share-of-wallet.

- o Specifically, a customer's share-of-wallet can be predicted by (1) the relative satisfaction rank of a brand used by a customer, and (2) the number of brands used by that customer. Combining these two pieces of information in the Wallet Allocation Rule (WAR), one can calculate a reliable and accurate prediction of share-of-wallet.
- o One important implication of the WAR is that simply increasing a firm's satisfaction score does not increase its share-of-wallet if it does not also achieve a change in ranking vis-à-vis competitors.

LO 3 ▶ There are four levels of service performance, and only the last two follow the key lessons from this book:

- (1) *Service losers*. They are poor performers in marketing, operations, and HRM. Service losers survive because monopoly situations give customers little choice other than to buy from them.
- (2) *Service non-entities*. Their performance leaves much to be desired, but they have eliminated the worst features of service losers.
- (3) *Service professionals*. They have a clear market position, and customers in target segments seek them out on the basis of their sustained reputation for meeting expectations. They are solid performers in marketing, operations, and HR, and the functions are tightly integrated.
- (4) *Service leaders*. They are the breakthrough service champions that are regarded as the crème de la crème of their respective industries. Their company names are synonymous with service excellence and an ability to delight customers.

We contrasted the description and actions of a service leader against professionals, non-entities, and losers along the three functional areas in Table 15.1. Service leadership requires high performance across a number of dimensions. These may include the use of sophisticated marketing, the management and motivation of employees, and the continuous improvement of service quality and productivity.

LO 4 ▶ Human leaders at all levels of an organization are needed for a service firm to be taken in the right direction and to ensure that the relevant strategies are implemented throughout the organization.

- (1) The various chapters throughout this book discuss exactly how to do that. You now have the tools, concepts, and theories that will help you become an agent of change in your organization.
- (2) At the strategic level, the two most common strategies are either a cost or a service excellence focus.
 - o A low-cost strategy aims to minimize costs by running centralized, standardized, and automated processes while building volume. Customers can be satisfied with good quality standard services that provide excellent value for money.
 - o A service excellence strategy is based on a deep understanding of customers, responsiveness to their needs and requests, high quality, and customized services that are offered at a price premium and are typically for smaller target segments.
 - o It is difficult to combine both strategies. Nevertheless, there are a few breakthrough service organizations that have achieved such a combined strategy of cost-effective service excellence.

LO 5 ▶ There are three strategic pathways organizations have taken to achieve cost-effective service excellence (CESE):

- (1) Dual-culture strategy,
- (2) Operations management approach, and
- (3) Focused service factory strategy.

These strategies can be used in combination.

LO 6 ▶ The dual-culture strategy focuses an entire organization on the simultaneous pursuit of service excellence and productivity and makes both of them integral parts of its culture. This approach uses ambidextrous organizational approaches:


- o *Leadership ambidexterity* involves leaders who rally their organizations to internalize a "both/and" rather than an "either/or" logic. This allows leaders to put systems in place to focus and energize the organization on the potentially conflicting demands of cost-effectiveness and service excellence, to role model ambidextrous behaviors, and to reinforce them with internal communication, training, rewards, and recognition.

Endnotes


1. Claes Fornell, Forrest V. Morgeson III, and G. Thomas M. Hult, "Stock Returns on Customer Satisfaction Do Beat the Market: Gauging the Effect of a Marketing Intangible," *Journal of Marketing* 80 (September 2016): 92–107.
2. The authors estimated that a 20% increase in operational investments to improve service resulted in an immediate drop in operating profits. However, the very next year, there was an increase in profit that amounted to twice the drop experienced in the year of investment. See Heiner Evanschitzky, Florian V. Wangenheim, and Nancy V. Wunderlich, "Perils of Managing the Service Profit Chain: The Role of Time Lags and Feedback Loops," *Journal of Retailing* 88(3) (2012): 356–366.
3. The operations perspective was originally developed by Richard B. Chase and Robert H. Hayes, "Beefing Up Operations in Service Firms," *Sloan Management Review* (Fall 1991): 15–26. The framework showed in this chapter has been significantly extended and updated to incorporate the marketing and HR functions.
4. Claudia H. Deutsch, "Management: Companies Scramble to Fill Shoes at the Top," *The New York Times*, nytimes.com (accessed November 1, 2000).
5. For how to build successful low-cost or high-differentiation service strategies, see Alex Hill, Richard Cuthbertson, Benjamin Laker, and Steve Brown, "Service Fitness Ladders: Improving Business Performance in Low Cost and Differentiated Markets," *International Journal of Operations & Productions Management* 37(10) (2017): 1266–1303.
6. For research on the performance of cost- versus quality-focused strategies, see Vikas Mittal, Eugene W. Anderson, Akin Sayrak, and Pandu Tadikamalla, "Dual Emphasis and the Long-Term Financial Impact of Customer Satisfaction," *Marketing Science* 24(4) (2005): 544–555; Roland T. Rust, Christine Moorman, and Jacqueline van Beuningen, "Quality Mental Model Convergence and Business Performance," *International Journal of Research in Marketing* 33(1) (2016): 155–171.
7. This section is based on Jochen Wirtz and Valarie Zeithaml, "Cost-Effective Service Excellence," *Journal of the Academy of Marketing Science* 46(1) (2018): 59–80, <https://link.springer.com/article/10.1007/s11747-017-0560-7>; Jochen Wirtz, "Organizational Ambidexterity: Cost-Effective Service Excellence, Service Robots, and Artificial Intelligence," *Organizational Dynamics* 49(3) (2020): 1–9, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.orgdyn.2019.04.005>; Jochen Wirtz, "Cost-Effective Service Excellence in Healthcare," *AMS Review* 9(1–2) (2019): 98–104; Jochen Wirtz, Chapter 14, "Strategic Pathways to Cost-Effective Service Excellence," in Eileen Bridges and Kendra Fowler (eds.), *The Routledge Handbook of Service Research Insights and Ideas* (Abingdon-on-Thames, UK: Routledge, 2020), pp. 423–440.
8. Thomas H. Davenport and Book Manville, *Judgment Calls: 12 Stories of Big Decisions and the Teams That Got Them Right* (Boston: Harvard Business Review Press, 2012), p. 157.
9. James C. Collins and Jerry I. Porras, *Built to Last: Successful Habits of Visionary Companies* (New York: HarperCollins, 1994), pp. 43–45; Wendy K. Smith, Marianne W. Lewis, and Michael L. Tushman, "Both/And' Leadership: Don't Worry So Much about Being Consistent," *Harvard Business Review* 94(5) (2016): 62–70.
10. Cristina B. Gibson and Julian Birkinshaw, "The Antecedents, Consequences, and Mediating Role of Organizational Ambidexterity," *Academy of Management Journal* 47(2) (2004): 209–226.
11. John C. Bogle, *Character Counts: The Creation and Building of The Vanguard Group* (New York: McGraw-Hill, 2002), p. 138.
12. James L. Heskett, W. Earl Sasser, Jr., and Leonard A. Schlesinger, *What Great Service Leaders Know & Do* (Oakland: Berrett-Koehler Publishers, 2015), p. 77.
13. Global Health and Travel, "Dr. Devi Shetty: Maverick, Crusader, and Caregiver," (2014), p. 44.
14. Brad Stone, *The Everything Store: Jeff Bezos and the Age of Amazon* (New York: Little, Brown and Company, 2013), p. 333.
15. Wickham Skinner, "The Focused Service Factory," *Harvard Business Review* 52(3) (1974): 116.
16. Jochen Wirtz, Chapter 14: "Strategic Pathways to Cost-Effective Service Excellence," pp. 423–440.


CHAPTER SUMMARY

- o *Contextual ambidexterity* governs the thinking and decision making of individual employees about when to focus on service excellence, when to emphasize cost-effectiveness, and ideally, how to integrate both objectives synergistically.
- o A *dual-culture strategy* is difficult to execute as it can strain employees; it may seem counterintuitive to offer great service externally but be stingy internally at the same time. Organizations require a credible “rallying cry,” or rationale, to get employee buy-in (e.g., “we make Michelin-starred food affordable” or “we support a charitable cause”).

-  **LO 7** ▶ The operations management approach deploys a combination of tools to reduce process variability so that systems and technology can be deployed. The tools include
- (1) buffering and industrializing the back office, and shifting activities from the expensive front office to an industrialized back office. A buffered back office is easier to industrialize.
 - (2) modularizing service through reduced customer choice, interaction flexibility, and contact, which allows an increased deployment of systems and technologies also in the front office.
 - (3) the deployment of self-service technologies (SSTs), robotics, and AI—which becomes easier after processes and products have been modularized and have low complexity.

These three tools build on one another, whereby the implementation of each step eases the implementation of the next.

-  **LO 8** ▶ The focused service factory strategy tailors a single solution to meet the exact needs of a specific customer segment combined with a culture for service excellence. It reduces customer-induced variability to a minimum, and customers receive a single, highly standardized, and excellent service offering. This strategy is a relatively easy way to achieve CESE.

-  **LO 9** ▶ Of the three core strategies, the dual-culture strategy is the hardest to execute. Service excellence is a natural focus of service employees, but cost-effectiveness is a harder sell.

The operations management approach and focused service factory strategy hardwire productivity and cost-effectiveness into the business model, and employees can focus on service excellence without having to focus so heavily on cost and incremental productivity gains. This makes the operations management approach and focused service factory strategy easier to implement.

An accelerated shift toward operations management and focused service factory–based business models is likely to occur with increasing deployment of service robots and AI.

- CASE 13** Banyan Tree: Branding the Intangible 567
Jochen Wirtz
- CASE 14** Singapore Airlines: Managing Human Resources for Cost-Effective Service Excellence 575
Jochen Wirtz and Loizos Heracleous
- CASE 15** Menton Bank 583
Christopher H. Lovelock and Jochen Wirtz
- CASE 16** Dr. Mahalee Goes to London: Global Client Management 591
Christopher H. Lovelock
- CASE 17** Platform versus Pipeline Business Models: Are Airbnb and Marriott Right to Move into Each Other's Turf? 593
Jochen Wirtz
- CASE 18** The Royal Dining Membership Program Dilemma 596
Sheryl E. Kimes, Rohit Verma, Christopher W. Hart, and Jochen Wirtz
- CASE 19** The Broadstripe Service Guarantee 602
Jochen Wirtz and Sven Tuzovic
- CASE 20** What Drives Share of Streaming for Streaming Video Services? The Launch of HBO Max 606
Alexander Buoye, Luke Williams, Timothy Keiningham, and Lerzan Aksoy
- CASE 21** LUX*: Staging a Service Revolution in a Resort Chain 617
Jochen Wirtz and Ron Kaufman

Uber's Unintended Burdens

Christopher S. Tang and Jochen Wirtz

On August 13, 2020, Uber CEO Dara Khosrowshahi explained that Uber was backing Proposition 22, which would exempt it from Assembly Bill 5 (AB5), a California law that would require Uber to treat its drivers as employees with benefits effectively on January 1, 2020.¹ To win over California voters, Uber and Lyft were considering shutting down their services “temporarily” in California as a means to appeal to those who vote on Proposition 22 in the November 2020 ballot. This case looks at Uber’s position as it awaited this decision.

Uber lost over \$8 billion in 2019 and was expected to lose \$6 billion by October 2020. California Assembly Bill 5, a state statute, was expected to increase Uber’s operating cost dramatically. It would also be a major blow to Uber and other gig economy firms (e.g., Uber Eats, Grubhub, Deliveroo) if other states in the United States and other countries were to follow suit and propose labor laws similar to AB5. If so, Chief Executive Dara Khosrowshahi’s premonition back in 2019, when it filed for IPO, that Uber might never be profitable would indeed come true.² Was this law to become the beginning of the end for Uber?

THE BEGINNING

Uber was hailed as a disruptive force in transportation that could put taxi services out of business. Ever since Travis Kalanick and Garrett Camp founded Uber in 2009, this multinational ride-hailing company had expanded its services from ride-hailing (UberX, Uber Black, Uber Pool) to food delivery (Uber Eats), to freight transportation (Uber Freight), to electric bikes and motorized scooter rental (through a partnership with Lime).

Uber’s smartphone app was well designed. By downloading the app and by linking it with a credit card, a customer, or rider, could immediately hail a ride by specifying the destination and pick-up location. The app provided the estimated price, and once the price was accepted, the app would match the rider with nearby drivers and then provide the name of their driver; their customer rating; the make, model, and license plate number of the car; the estimated time for the pickup; as well as real-time tracking information about the location of the driver. At the end of the ride, the rider could leave a

tip and rate the driver. This seamless service had been well received by riders.

Uber operated in a two-sided market. Its success hinged upon massive rider and driver participation. To reduce waiting time for riders, Uber needed many drivers. At the same time, to reduce idle time and increase earnings for drivers, Uber needed many riders. To entice both riders and drivers to participate, Uber was able to use venture capital funds³ to capture market share in many markets by heavily subsidizing drivers and riders, getting them to switch from taxis to Uber (Exhibit 1). Investors gave Uber a valuation of over \$70 billion even though it had lost billions of dollars every year except in 2018, the year before it filed for IPO (Table 1).

The IPO

Uber celebrated its IPO in May 2019 with huge fanfare, but many investors were nervous about Uber’s profitability in the near future. To calm nervous investors, Khosrowshahi provided some assurance by emphasizing that (1) Uber was well positioned to penetrate a \$12 trillion addressable market, (2) Uber’s platform was poised to become the “Amazon of transportation,” and (3) other companies like Amazon and Facebook also had rocky IPOs. Uber debuted on New York Stock Exchange at \$42 per share, which was lower than its expected price at \$45. After its IPO in 2019, the share price was hovering around \$30 per share in 2020. Was this a reflection of investors’ doubts about Uber’s long-term success?

ROCKY ROAD

One of the promises of Uber was that it could grow and capture markets worldwide. As an online platform, Uber’s asset-light model enabled the firm to scale its operations in many markets without a huge setup cost. However, Uber

© Christopher S. Tang and Jochen Wirtz 2023. First published in Jochen Wirtz and Christopher Lovelock, *Services Marketing: People, Technology, Strategy*, 9th edition (New Jersey: World Scientific, 2021).



Service Robots in the Frontline: How Will Aarion Bank's Customers Respond?

Jochen Wirtz, Stefanie Paluch, and Werner Kunz

The top management at Aarion Bank was pushing for a rapid digital transformation and intelligent automation. That included customer service with the aim of moving almost all routine transactions, services, and enquiries to cost-effective but high-quality, cutting-edge digital delivery channels. These included smart AI-powered self-service technologies and service robots. Nikita Jones, the Vice President of Customer Service, was worried about how some customer segments would respond to this strategic direction the bank was to embark upon and how she could prepare her team and its various customer segments for this digital transformation.

“I’m concerned about the speed and scope top management pushes in our digital transformation,” said Nikita Jones to Antony Lee, her deputy head of customer service. She and Lee were having a follow-up discussion after a board meeting where the CEO had outlined the bank’s aggressive push toward rapid digitization of its retail banking division. The board and top management expected significant cost savings, better service quality, higher compliance, and easy scalability of its operations. However, Jones worried how the bank’s customers, many of them being wealthy Baby Boomers and Gen-Xers, would respond. After the meeting, the CEO had sent an email to share his vision; it clearly shows his enthusiasm for this accelerated push. It included the following:

Central for almost all businesses to survive is the digital and technological revolution we are all currently living through. I am convinced that the service sector is at an inflection point with regard to productivity gains and service industrialization, similar to the industrial revolution in manufacturing that started in the 18th century. Virtually all service sectors will be transformed by rapidly developing technologies that become better, smarter, smaller, and cheaper. This applies especially to technologies that are relevant in retail banking, such as AI, chatbots,

analytics, machine learning, mobile technologies, apps, geo-tagging, biometrics, and text processing, speech processing, image processing, and so much more.¹

In combination, these technologies and service innovations have the potential to dramatically improve the customer experience and productivity all at the same time. Furthermore, many of these technologies have almost zero incremental cost. For example, AI and virtual service robots (e.g., voice-based chatbots) require significant investments for their development, but then can be scaled. Serving more customers has almost zero incremental costs.

Have a look at the case study of a leading bank that is already in the advanced stages of digitization and intelligent automation [see the section “Understanding the Power of IA through an Example” in this case]. This is where I envisage we will go, too. Thankfully, this bank is in a different geography and we are not competing with it!

By going faster than our local competitors, we may have the opportunity to gain significant market share! Let’s be proactive and make this our number one strategic direction. We want to become one of the world’s best digital banks taking full advantage of intelligent automation... but of course, with a personal touch, where needed and where it adds real value!

© 2022 by Jochen Wirtz, Stefanie Paluch, and Werner Kunz.

Note: This case is based on expert interviews, focus groups conducted with consumers, and on the following publications: Jochen Wirtz, Werner Kunz and Stefanie Paluch, “The Service Revolution, Intelligent Automat and Service Robots,” *The European Business Review* (January–February 2021): 38–44; and Jochen Wirtz, Paul Patterson, Werner Kunz, Thorsten Gruber, Vinh Nhat Lu, Stefanie Paluch, and Antje Martins, “Brave New World: Service Robots in the Frontline,” *Journal of Service Management* 29(5) (2018): 907–931, <https://doi.org/10.1108/JOSM-04-2018-0119> (open access).

Jones shook her head and wondered, “How can we develop an implementation strategy that will be embraced by our customers? Do we need to structure our implementation by types of services, customers, profitability? What else do we need to worry about?” Then Jones recalled the customer survey a marketing agency had recently conducted. Jones and Lee looked through the findings of the focus groups and the representative quotes the research agency had pulled out

Digital Luxury Services: Tradition versus Innovation in Luxury Fashion

Jonas Holmqvist, Jochen Wirtz, and Martin P. Fritze

The world of luxury is undergoing rapid changes as many classic luxury brands embark on markedly different strategies to deal with an increasingly digital economy. Some luxury brands such as Chanel and Bottega Veneta have deliberately chosen to minimize the impact of digitization and instead focus even more heavily on the traditional service encounter in their boutiques. Other luxury brands like Dior, Saint Laurent, and Hermès follow a different strategy as they push innovative new digital services, which has led to rapidly growing online sales. At their core, all these brands continue to sell luxury fashion, yet their approach to digitization of the service encounter could not be more different even as they seek to preserve their exclusivity. How can luxury fashion brands develop their digital service strategy and at the same time retain the exclusive and personalized service their customers expect?

The luxury sector is in many ways remarkably different from most other business fields, not least as its focus remains solidly on exclusivity rather than trying to reach as many customers as possible. Luxury brands are well aware of the inverted price–demand curve: contrary to other brands, luxury brands often see increased demand for their products as prices go up. A key definition of luxury is *exclusivity that combines with quality in order to become something desirable for many customers*. Well aware of the importance of exclusivity, many luxury brands actively want to keep the number of

customers limited. In the words of Patrick Thomas, former CEO of French luxury brand Hermès: “The luxury industry is built on a paradox: the more desirable a brand becomes, the more it sells, but the more it sells, the less desirable it becomes.”

In line with this paradox, most luxury brands are only available in a few selected places; their flagship stores are often found in the fashion capitals, and customers from all over the world travel to visit them. The servicescape in these boutiques is carefully and exquisitely designed to appeal to all senses to reinforce the desired brand positioning. The service encounter itself should match the high expectations of the customer. As part of the service experience, customers are often served champagne or other beverages and receive personalized and attentive service.

However, the world of luxury is changing, and it is changing rapidly. Millennials and younger generations who have



mauritiu images GmbH/Alamy Stock Photo

© 2023 by Jonas Holmqvist, Jochen Wirtz, and Martin P. Fritze.

Note: This case is based on expert interviews, media reports, and the following publications: Jonas Holmqvist, Jochen Wirtz, and Martin P. Fritze, “Luxury in the Digital Age: A Multi-Actor Service Encounter Perspective,” *Journal of Business Research* 121 (December 2020): 907–931; Jochen Wirtz, Jonas Holmqvist, and Martin P. Fritze, “Luxury Services,” *Journal of Service Management* 31(4): 665–691.



Mike Goldwater/Alamy Stock Photo



Singapore Airlines: Managing Human Resources for Cost-Effective Service Excellence

Jochen Wirtz and Loizos Heracleous



We find the films you love, to make you feel at home.

A truly entertaining journey. There's more to it than just the latest movies. It's about finding culture and experiences from near and far, for you to enjoy. Because we understand that enriching moments make your flight just that much more meaningful. It's just one of the lengths we go to, to make you feel at home.



A STAR ALLIANCE MEMBER

SIA's brand campaign, "The Lengths We Go To"

© 2016 by Jochen Wirtz and Loizos Heracleous, revised 2022 by Jochen Wirtz.

This case is based on the following publications: Loizos Heracleous and Jochen Wirtz, "Singapore Airlines' Balancing Act—Asia's Premier Carrier Successfully Executes a Dual Strategy: It Offers World-Class Service and Is a Cost Leader," *Harvard Business Review* 88(7–8) (July–August 2010): 145–149; Loizos Heracleous, Jochen Wirtz, and Nitin Pangarkar, *Flying High in a Competitive Industry: Cost-Effective Service Excellence at Singapore Airlines* (McGraw-Hill Education [Asia], 2009); Jochen Wirtz, Loizos Heracleous, and Nitin Pangarkar, "Managing Human Resources for Service Excellence and Cost Effectiveness at Singapore Airlines," *Managing Service Quality* 18(1) (2008): 4–19; interviews conducted with Singapore Airlines by Jochen Wirtz in 2015; and Jochen Wirtz and Valarie Zeithaml, "Cost-Effective Service Excellence," *Journal of the Academy of Marketing Science* 46(1) (2018): 59–80, <https://link.springer.com/article/10.1007/s11747-017-0560-7>. All images are courtesy of Singapore Airlines.

Platform versus Pipeline Business Models: Are Airbnb and Marriott Right to Move into Each Other's Turf?

Jochen Wirtz

To continue its fast growth, Airbnb diverted from its pure peer-to-peer (P2P) strategy and has been adding owned-room capacity. Meanwhile, Marriott has added P2P platform-sourced rooms to its marketing and distribution channels. The question the senior management of both companies need to address is what it takes for them to be successful in each other's turf.

It has become fashionable to show tables of the market valuations of supposed legacy companies like Marriott International (referred to here as pipeline businesses) and compare them to their peer-to-peer (P2P) platform business model counterparts such as Airbnb. Indeed, these asset-light platform businesses often approach or even exceed the market capitalization of their “old economy” counterparts, although they often have no physical assets to speak of. Over the past 10 years, P2P platforms have enjoyed explosive growth. Consumers around the world have become familiar with the sharing economy and many are happy to use what it offers, such as the peer-provided accommodation on Airbnb.

Exhibit 1: For Airbnb, maintaining the pace of expansion meant going beyond the gig economy.

Anna Berkut/Alamy Stock Photo



© 2023 by Jochen Wirtz.

This case is based on the following publications: Martin P. Fritze, Martin Benkenstein, Russell Belk, Joann Peck, Jochen Wirtz, and Bart Claus, “Commentaries on the Sharing Economy: Advancing New Perspectives,” *Journal of Service Management Research* 5(1) (2021): 3–19; Makarand Mody, Jochen Wirtz, Kevin K.F. So, Helen Chun, and Stephanie Liu, “Two-Directional Convergence of Platform and Pipeline Business Models,” *Journal of Service Management* 31(4) (2020): 693–721; and Jochen Wirtz, Kevin Kam Fung So, Makarand Mody, Stephanie Liu, and Helen Chun, “Platforms in the Peer-to-Peer Sharing Economy,” *Journal of Service Management* 30(4) (2019): 452–483, <https://doi.org/10.1108/JOSM-11-2018-0369> (open access).

AIRBNB'S MOVE INTO PIPELINE BUSINESSES

To sustain its rapid growth, Airbnb acquired last-minute hotel booking platform HotelTonight, which enabled it to offer HotelTonight's independent and boutique hotel offerings directly on the Airbnb platform. Thanks to the acquisition, instead of having to work individually and directly with boutique hotels and bed and breakfast owners to list their properties, Airbnb could integrate a large amount of hotel inventory onto the Airbnb platform at a lower cost. This was achieved through technology integration at the back-end between HotelTonight and Airbnb. Offering these hotels and vacation rentals on one platform allowed Airbnb to enjoy marketing-related synergies associated with cross-selling. In particular, Airbnb found that guests who first booked a hotel on Airbnb were highly likely to return and also book peer-provided rooms in the future.

Furthermore, Airbnb started pipeline-like product innovation with an emphasis on standardizing products. For example, it launched Airbnb Plus, which listed quality-inspected homes that include everyday essentials. While these homes commanded a price premium over regular Airbnb listings, they offered the traveler more hotel-like consistency with a specified minimum level of comfort, amenities, and design.

Airbnb Luxe was another sub-brand that offered “extraordinary homes with five-star everything.” These homes had to adhere to over 300 brand standards, including design features such as high-vaulted ceilings, attractive art, and closets with matching hangers, thus enabling Airbnb to develop branded

What Drives Share of Streaming for Streaming Video Services? The Launch of HBO Max

Alexander Buoye, Luke Williams, Timothy Keiningham, and Lerzan Aksoy

HBO Max launched its streaming service in May 2020. At the time of the launch, streaming services were already well established and dominated by a few large, well-established competitors (e.g., Netflix, Amazon Prime, Disney+, Hulu, etc.). In the face of intense competition, HBO Max's initial launch was widely characterized as "underwhelming" despite its large content library and a rise in streaming due to the COVID-19 pandemic.

A survey of streaming service customers demonstrated why HBO Max's launch was largely deemed underwhelming. HBO Max's Net Promoter Score (NPS), a measure of customers' satisfaction with the brand, was well below its two largest competitors, Amazon Prime and Netflix.

Despite the low NPS, however, HBO Max's share of streaming by its customers was a respectable 38%. One of the big issues for HBO Max post-launch was finding a way to increase its share of streaming. NPS, however, provides little guidance in improving share as the results of the survey found it to be very weakly correlated to share of streaming.

By using wallet allocation rule analysis, however, data regarding customers' perceptions of HBO Max and competitors is strongly linked to customers' share of streaming. As a result, it was possible to identify what HBO Max must do to gain share in the competitive video streaming market.

INTRODUCTION

Video streaming services are a major entertainment delivery platform. Across the world, the rise in streaming services often came at the expense of traditional cable and broadcast delivery platforms. As a result, traditional video content providers had to adapt to the streaming environment or risk becoming obsolete.

The subscription streaming video market was dominated by only a few major players. Netflix and Amazon Prime had been the acknowledged leaders in the vertical, with media giant Disney competing on a robust but more fragmented basis through its family of subsidiary content offerings (Disney+ and Hulu as well as the sports specialty service, ESPN+). In May 2020, AT&T's WarnerMedia introduced its HBO Max streaming service as another alternative, replacing or enhancing previous incarnations (e.g., HBO Go, HBO Now) of their streaming platform. This case examines the launch of HBO Max.

At the time of the HBO Max launch, the legacy HBO streaming services (HBO Go, HBO Now) claimed only about 8 million subscribers. However, when including all traditional

HBO cable/satellite subscribers, the combined number reached 35 million. By comparison, Netflix boasted 183 million subscribers; Amazon Prime, 150 million; Disney+, 50 million; Apple TV+, 33 million; and Hulu 30, million.¹ YouTube, a more general, non-subscription-based streaming video platform, claimed well over 1.6 billion users globally.² YouTube's premium subscription service, YouTube Premium (formerly YouTube Red), however, claimed only about 20 million subscribers.³ Sling TV (a subsidiary of Dish Network) was a minor player, with fewer than 2.5 million subscribers in May 2020.⁴

The launch of HBO Max was expected to bring the HBO streaming active user numbers more in line with leading competitors. According to AT&T's WarnerMedia third quarter earnings report, the number of HBO and HBO Max U.S. subscribers exceeded company targets (38 million vs a 37 million target by the end of 2020) and reached 57 million globally.⁵ However, fewer than half of eligible subscribers had actually activated the service.⁶ The low activation rate was credited in large part to technical issues, as the HBO Max app was not readily available on major platforms like Roku and Amazon Fire TV.⁷ By October 2020, the general consensus about the HBO Max launch was "underwhelming,"⁸ despite a strong content library and increased overall viewership of streaming video due to the COVID-19 global pandemic.⁹

© 2021 Alexander Buoye, Luke Williams, Timothy Keiningham, and Lerzan Aksoy



LUX*: Staging a Service Revolution in a Resort Chain

Jochen Wirtz and Ron Kaufman

LUX* is a successful hospitality group operating in the Indian Ocean as well as other locations. In its previous incarnation, the company suffered from poor financial performance, poor service quality, and a weak brand. A change in the leadership of the company prompted a transformation that showed positive results within 12 months. This case study describes a service revolution that led to rapid improvements in service culture and guest experience, which in turn led to sustained financial improvements on a quarter-on-quarter basis and long-term growth.

INTRODUCTION

With its headquarters in Mauritius, the LUX* hospitality group operates a portfolio of eight resorts and a private island in the Indian Ocean (Exhibit 1). The brand promises guests a celebration of life through its new value proposition—luxury resort hospitality that is “Lighter.Brighter.”

What is the “Lighter.Brighter” hospitality? Established luxury hotels had come to be associated with stiff-upper-lipped service and stuffy opulence. Lighter hospitality meant breaking away from these precedents to offer a more effervescent experience without compromising on the hotel’s upscale sensibilities. At the same time, LUX* wanted to brighten up guest experiences. For example, the company significantly lowered the prices of items in the mini-bar to encourage guests to just take what they fancied and enjoy themselves. Such measures allowed LUX* to ensure that both guests and business would benefit from its operations.

The group’s resorts have been doing exceptionally well since its launch in 2011. Within a short span of time, LUX*

has successfully transformed its service culture. The group has seen 16 consecutive quarter-on-quarter improvements in its financial performance. The group’s resorts also enjoy a higher occupancy rate than the industry average in the destinations where they operate (measured quarterly by the Market Penetration Index, which compares the hotel’s occupancy against its competitive set). The group’s financial performance is reflected in the multiple accolades it has won for service excellence. These include the “Indian Ocean Leading Hotel” award for LUX* Maldives from World Travel Awards, the “Best Resort Hotel Mauritius” award for LUX* Belle Mare from International Hospitality Awards, and the “Reunion Island’s Leading Hotel” award for LUX* Ile de la Réunion from World Travel Awards.

THE DARK AGES

However, things were not always this rosy. Before LUX* was launched in 2011, the group was known as Naiade Resorts, and the company suffered from poor financial health. None of its hotels were on the list of top 10 hotels on TripAdvisor in their geographic competitive sets. To top it off, the Naiade brand lacked clarity. Its brand name was used for nine different properties ranging from three to five stars, creating an unclear positioning in the minds of consumers. The problems in its positioning became apparent when the global financial crisis struck in 2008–2009, causing a large drop in occupancy and room rates (Exhibit 2). The group’s troubles culminated in 2011 with a criminal case involving the high-profile murder of an Irish hotel guest.

Having witnessed prolonged economic turmoil and a criminal case, the motivation and morale of hotel employees were unprecedentedly low. Financially, the impact of these

© 2023 by Jochen Wirtz and Ron Kaufman, updated 2022 by Jochen Wirtz. Jochen Wirtz is Professor of Marketing at the National University of Singapore. Ron Kaufman is a bestselling author on uplifting service.

The support and feedback of the management of The Lux Collective is gratefully acknowledged, including Paul Jones, CEO; Julian Hagger, Executive Vice President; Dominik Ruhl, Chief Operating Officer—EMEA; Nitesh Pandey, Chief Operating Officer—APAC; Marie-Laure-Ah-You, Chief Strategy Officer; Nicolas Autrey, Chief Human Resources Officer; Smita Modak, Group Training Manager; and Piers Schmidt, Founder of Luxury Branding. The authors also thank Arthur Lee, who provided excellent assistance with the data collection, analysis and the writing of this case study while he was a student at the NUS Business School; today, he is a Management Associate at MasterCard.

All dollar amounts referred to in the text are in U.S. dollars unless otherwise indicated. The exchange rate used for all currency conversions is MUR100 to USD2.845.

Name, Brand, and Organization Index

A

- Aarion Bank, 549–552
 ABC Corp., 217
 Abdullah, F., 153
 Accor, 130, 147
 Adams, S., 173, 189
 Aggreko, 127, 129
 Air Canada, 349
 AirAsia, 211–213
 Airbnb, 65, 81, 113, 114, 123, 155,
 167, 169, 219, 593–595
 Airport Plaza, 77, 78
 Akehurst, G., 153
 Aksoy, L., xxviii, 403, 481, 482, 483, 606
 Alba, J. W., 189
 Alexander IV, 78
 Alkire, L., xxviii
 Alwi, M. R., 153
 Amazon, 115, 134, 205, 215, 258, 487,
 491, 493–495
 Amazon Prime, 606–610, 612, 614, 616
 Ambtman, A., 232
 American Airlines, 385, 387
 AMEX, 142
 Anderson, C. K., 477
 Anderson, E. W., 61, 503
 Anderson, S. R., 189
 Andreassen, T. W., xxviii, 90, 365
 Andreessen, M., 114
 Angelou, M., 251
 Antons, D., 121
 Appel, G., 232
 Apple, 115, 304
 Armani, G., 554
 Armani Privè, 554, 555
 Armario, E. M., 365
 Armstrong, G., 232
 Ashill, N. J., 365
 Au Bon Pain, 342, 343
 Auh, S., 404
 Aussie Pooch Mobile (APM), 539–548
 Ayres, I., 189
- Baer, R., 231
 Baidu, 209
 Baily, M. N., 477
 Baker, J., 231, 299, 326, 327
 Baker, W. E., 477
 Ball, D., 403
 Banerjee, M., 153
 Banerjee, S., 232
 Bansal, H. S., xxix
 Banyan Tree Hotels & Resorts, 567–574
 Barach, P., 306
 Barkin, I., 265, 477
 Barlow, J., 433
 Barnes, B., 286
 Baron, S., xxviii, 61
 Barron, G., 299
 Barry, T. E., 231
 Bart, Y., 231, 404
 Bateson, J. E. G., xxviii, 61, 327, 365
 Batista, L., 189
 Batra, R., 231
 Bayon, T., 189
 Beatty, S. E., 153
 Bell, C. R., 416
 Bell, S. J., 404, 433
 Bell, T., 134
 Bellis, E. de, 61
 Bellizzi, J. A., 327
 Benjaafar, S., 189
 Benlian, A., 366
 Benoit, S., xxviii, 153
 Bentley, K., 327
 Berman, B. R., 311
 Berman, R., 231
 Bernoff, J., 433
 Berry, L. L., xxviii, 33, 44, 53, 54, 61,
 105, 111, 120, 153, 189, 231, 271,
 306, 318, 326, 356, 365, 366, 403,
 433, 441, 444, 445, 464, 477
 Bezos, J., 491, 493
 Biege, S., 33
 Bielen, F., 299
 Bing, 209, 213
 Biolos, J., 477
 Birkinshaw, J., 503
 Birla, M., 454
 Bitner, M. J., xxviii, 33, 61, 121, 153,
 231, 271, 327, 365, 403, 441, 444
 Black, H. G., 365
 Blagg, D., 366
 Blodgett, J., 231
- Bloemer, J., 232
 BMW, 290
 Bodey, K., 433
 Bogle, J. C., 380, 491, 493, 503
 Bolton, L. E., 189
 Bolton, R., xxviii, 403
 Bone, S. A., 271
 Bonfanti, A., 317, 327
 Booking.com, 138
 Booms, B. H., 33
 Borah, A., 232
 Bornet, P., 265, 477
 Borowiecki, M., 33
 Boston Marathon, 318
 Bottega Veneta, 554, 555
 Boudreau, K. J., 121
 Bougie, R., 432
 Boulding, W., 61, 404
 Bourdeau, B. L., 299
 Bourgeois, L., 301
 Bove, L. L., 365
 Bowen, D. E., xxviii, 271,
 343, 350, 365, 366
 Bradley, G. L., 366
 Brady, M. K., 366
 Brandimarte, L., 232
 Branson, R., 216
 Breidbach, C. F., 121, 320, 327
 Breitsohl, J., 327
 Bridges, E., 477, 503
 Bright Horizons, 63, 65, 75
 Brin, S., 209
 British Airways (BA), 109, 387
 Club (business class), 387
 Executive Club, 387
 Broadstripe, 602–605
 Brocato, E. D., 299
 Broderick, A., 433
 Bromuri, S., 365
 Brown, J. C., 4777
 Brown, L., 33
 Brown, R., 63, 75, 90
 Brown, S. W., xxviii, 121, 153,
 271, 365, 432, 503
 Brown, T. J., 231, 365
 Brügggen, E., xxviii
 Brusco, M. J., 366
 Brustein, J., 189
 Bujisic, M., 90
 Bulte, C. V., 232
 Buoye, A. J., 481, 482, 483, 606

B

- Bachman, J., 327
 Bacon, D. R., 477
 Baeklund, P., 343

Bureau of Economic Analysis, 9
Burger King, 35, 37, 38, 133, 511, 542
Burj Al Arab, 76
Burke, E. F., 365
Burke, K. G., 231
Burkhard, K. A., 121
Burton, J., 366
Buzz Lightyear's Tomorrowland, 317
Byers, J. W., 189
Byrnes, N., 90

C

Cabell, D. W. E., 189
Caesar's, 371
Čaić, M., 61, 271
Caldwell, C., 327
Campbell, C., 477
Canadian Rockies, 40
Candlewood Suites, 107
Canli, Z. G., 232
Captiv8, 219
Carbone, L. P., 318, 321
Carlo, T. E. De, 61
Carlzon, J., 46, 61
Casado-Diaz, A. B., 299
Castaldo, S., 403
Castle, 78
Castle, K., 191
Castro, C. B., 365
Castrogiovanni, G. J., 153
Catelinet, P., 365
Cathay Pacific, 387
Cavazotte, F., 366
CeBIT, 133
Central Intelligence Agency, 7, 8
Cespedes, F. V., 153
Chaffey, D., 231
Chanel, 554, 555
Chariots of Fire, 318
Chark, R., 189
Chase, R. B., xxviii, 61, 271, 366, 503
Chatterjee, J., xxix
Chatterjee, P. M., 311
Chebat, J. C., 433
Chen, M.-Y., 477
Cheong Choong Kong, 578
Cherno, J. R., 299
Chew, P., 231
Chez Jean, 241
Chiang, C., 567–571
Chiang, J., 189
Chiuri, M., 553
Choi, S., 320, 327
Choudhary, R., 306
Chrisman, J. J., 477
Christ-Brendemühl, S., 365
Christenson, C. M., 121
Christian Dior, 554, 555
Chun, H., 82
Cinema Paradiso, 108
Citibank, 142, 219, 349
Ciuchita, R., 477
Clark, G., 271
CNN, 142, 147, 208, 210, 213
Codjovi, I., 433
Coelho, P. S., 403
Coleman Associates, 270
Colgate, M., 271, 522
Collins, J., 338, 340, 365, 366
Collins, J. C., 503
Colurcio, M., 477
Constanti, P., 333, 365
Contiki Tours, 68
Continental, 79
Coil, B., 483
Cook, S., 121
Costa Coffee, 139
Cox, J. L., 189
Crane, F. G., 121
Crane, J., 306
Cronin, J. J. Jr., 299
Crosno, J. L., 365
Crotts, J., 433
Croux, C., 403
Crowley, A. E., 327
Crowne Plaza Hotels & Resorts, 107
Cullen, J., 33
Curran, J. M., 153
Customer Care Measurement & Consulting (CCMC), 433
Cuthbertson, R., 503
Czepiel, J. A., 61

D

Dabholkar, P. A., 271
Dachs, B., 33
Dacin, P. A., 231
Danaher, P. J., 189
Danaher, T. S., 271
D'Andrea, G., xxix
Darabi, T., 365
Darwin, C., 445
Das, G., xxix
d'Astous, A., 321, 327
Dasu, S., 61, 271
Davenport, T. H., 503
Davidow, M., 433
Davis-Poynter, S., 189
Day, G. S., 90
de Angelis, M., 433

de Matos, C. A., 433
Dellaert, B. G. C., 90
Delta Airlines, 114
Deming, K. A., 271, 306
Demirkan, H., 121
Demoulin, N., 299
Derfuss, K., 33, 365
Deutsch, C. H., 503
Devlin, J., 106, 120
DeVrye, C., 366
DeWitt, T., 433
DHL, 123, 127, 143, 223
Dick, G., 477
Dickson, D., 289, 299
Dickson, P. R., 477
Diefenbach, S., 232
Dijkstra, K., 326
Dilip Soman, 189
Dinnie, K., 404
Disney, 212, 285, 286, 289, 313, 320, 321, 340, 345, 359, 453, 467
 Disney Institute, 321, 366
 Disney theme parks, 317
 Disney Tokyo, 320
Disneyland Tokyo, 320
Disney+, 606–610
Dixon, M., 403, 433
Dolan, R. J., 170, 189
Domino's, 126
Donnelly, J. H., 33, 40, 61
Donovan, D. T., 365
Donovan, R. J., 326
Doucet, L., 365
Douglas, J., 327
Dowling, G. R., 403
Droll, M., 403
Dropbox, 180, 217
Dube, A., 271
Dubé, L., 327
Dukes, A., 433
Duncan, E., 271
Dutton, E., 327

E

Eagles, 155
Earl Sasser, W. Jr., 299
eBay, 193, 215, 219
Edgett, S., 121
Edvardsson, B., xxviii, 33, 121, 271, 404
Eggers, F., 232
Eggert, A., 33
Ehret, M., 33, 404
Ehrhart, K. H., 365
Eight NIST Stock Investment Study, 477

Eiglier, P., xxviii, 48, 61, 120
 Eisingerich, A. B., 232
 Eller, T., 33, 365
 Ellway, B., 320, 320
 El-Manstrly, D., 189, 404
 Emerald Lake, 40
 Ennew, C., 231
 Enterprise Rent-A-Car, 379
 ENZ, C. A., 477
 Erramilli, M. K., 404
 Ettinger, A., 153
 Evans, D. S., 90
 Evans, J. R., 311
 Evanschitzky, H., 404, 503
 Even Hotels, 107
 Ewing, M., 404
 Expedia, 138

F

Fabien, L., 232
 Facebook, 82, 84, 115, 147, 191, 193, 208, 212, 213
 Family Medicine Faculty Practice (FMFP), 237
 Fan, X., xxix
 Farrell, D., 477
 FedEx, 106, 107, 123, 127, 143, 206, 207, 223, 453–454, 470
 Feick, L., 404
 Felten, C., 90
 Feng, H., 403
 Ferguson, R., 403
 FIFA, 129
 Fisk, R. P., xxviii, 33, 61, 271, 365
 Fitzsimmons, J. A., 299
 Fitzsimmons, M. J., 299
 Fleming, R., 445
 Fliess, S., 61
 Flower of Service, 98, 105, 110, 120
 Flynn, A. G., 231
 Fombelle, P. W., 271
 Foodpanda, 138
 Ford, R. C., 289, 299
 Fornell, C., 480–481, 503
 Fortune, 63
 Foust, D., 189
 Fowler, K., 477, 503
 Frambach, R. T., 271
 Frazer, L., 539
 Freeman, K., 403, 433
 Freeman, S., 366
 Frei, F., 90
 Freiberg, J., 344, 366
 Freiberg, K., 344, 366
 Frissora, M., 359
 Fritze, M. P., xxviii, 327, 553
 Fromm, B., 365
 Frow, P., 231, 404
 Fruchter, G. E., 189
 Fuchs, C., 366
 Fürst, A., 433

G

Gallimore, K., 477
 Ganesh, L. S., 477
 Gay, S. E., 327
 Gehry, F., 301
 Gelbrich, K., 189, 433
 Gensler, S., 404
 George, W. R., 33, 61
 Gibbs, P., 333, 365
 Gibson, C. B., 503
 Gilmore, A., 477
 Gimbel, B., 344
 GitHub, 115
 Glady, N., 403
 Gnoth, J., 121
 Goh, S., 366
 Goh Choon Phong, 578
 Gold, 381
 Goodman, J., 433
 Google, 115, 142, 147, 208–210, 215, 219, 492
 Google Ads, 210, 265
 Google AdWords, 210
 Google+, 212
 Goul, M., 121
 Gourville, J., 189
 Grace, D., 433
 Grant, A. M., 366
 Grant, A. W. H., 403
 Grant Thornton, 75
 Grégoire, Y., 189, 433
 Gremler, D. D., 403, 433, 444
 Grewal, D., 153, 189, 271, 326, 327
 Grewal, L., 232
 Griffin, J., 433
 Griffith, C., 329
 Grönroos, C., xxviii, 61, 365, 477
 Gross, M. A., 326
 Groth, M., 365
 Grove, S. J., xxviii, 61
 Gruber, T., xxviii, 33, 61, 115, 262, 271, 366, 477
 Guenzi, P., 403
 Guggenheim Museum, 301
 Guidice, R. M., 366
 Gummerus, J., 271

Gummesson, E., xxviii, 33
 Gunst, R. F., 231
 Gupta, S., 403
 Gustafsson, A., xxviii, 33, 404
 Gutman, E. G., 61
 Gwinner, K. P., 403, 433

H

Haber, K., 299
 The Habit Burger Grill, 107
 Hadi, R., 232
 Haeckel, S. H., 318, 321
 Hagi, A., 90
 Halinen, A., 271
 Hall, T., 121
 Hallowell, R., 379, 403
 Halsall, D. N., 477
 Hamm, J., 366
 Han, S., 477
 Harari, O., 433
 Hard Rock Café, 147
 Hargrove, M., 433
 Harrah's, 371
 Diamond, 371
 Harrah's Entertainment, 371
 Horseshoe, 371
 Platinum, 381
 Harris, E., 153
 Harris, K., 61
 Harris, L. C., 33, 433
 Harris, R., 61
 Hart, C. W., 426, 433, 596
 Hartline, M. D., 366
 Hasty, R. W., 327
 Hayes, R. H., 503
 HBO Max, 606–616
 Heinonen, K., 189, 271
 Hemp, P., 366
 Hemzo, M. A., xxix
 Henkel, A. P., 365
 Henkel, S., 231
 Henrique, J. L., 433
 Heracleous, L., 467, 575
 Hercules, 129
 Heritage, 79
 Hermès, 553, 554
 Hertz, 39, 110, 142
 Heskett, J. L., xxviii, 25, 33, 332, 365, 366, 403, 503
 Hibbert, S. A., 231, 327
 Hill, A., 503
 Hill, D. J., 231
 Hill, S. R., 366
 Hirsch, A. R., 313, 327

Hlavinka, K., 403
Ho, J. P. T., 189
Hoang, H. T., 366
Hochschild, A. R., 333, 365
Hofacker, C. F., 404
Hogan, J. E., 231
Hogreve, J., xxviii, 33, 365, 433
Ho Kwon Cjan, 568
Ho Kwon Ping, 567
Holiday Inn, 22, 459
 Holiday Inn Express, 107, 314
Hollebeek, L. D., 61
Holmlund, M., 477
Holmqvist, J., 327, 553
Holtom, B. C., 365
Holtzschuhe, L., 327
Homburg, C., 403, 433
Horváth, C., 232
Hosseinpour, M., 327
Hotel Indigo, 107
Hoyer, W. D., 403
Hsieh, Pei-ling, 153
Hsieh, T., 215, 359, 366
Hu, M., 189
Huang, M., 33, 90, 231, 263, 271
Hudson, B., 271
Huete, L., xxix
Hughes, A., 477
Hult, G. T. M., 481, 503
Hulu, 602, 606–610
Hurrell, S. A., 365
Hüttel, B. A., 189
Hwang, E., 183

I

Iacobucci, D., 271, 433
Iacovone, L., xxix
IBM Watson, 263
IHG Rewards Club, 107
Instagram, 82, 193, 204, 208, 212, 219
InterContinental Hotel Group, 107
International Space Station, 113
Iren, D., 365
Iseke, A., 33, 365
Ishikawa, K., 455
Italia, 78
The Ithaa, 247

J

J. D. Powers, 75, 407
Jaakkola, E., 120, 271
Jack Trout, 74, 90

Jackson, K. M., 321
Jäger, A., 33
Jain, A., 232
Jenner, K., 219
Jerath, K., 231
JetBlue, 114, 407, 497
Johar, G. V., 61
John, J., 61
Johnson, C., 61
Johnson, J. L., 33
Johnson, L. W., 365
Johnson, M. D., 403
Johnston, R., xxviii, 61, 70, 90, 271
Jonas, J. M., 365
Jones, C., 271
Jones, M. A., 153, 404
Jones, P., 121, 299
Jones, T. O., 25, 33, 365
Joseph, A., 306, 327
Josephson, B. W., 33
Jun Ye, 366

K

Kaartemo, V., 271
Kale, S. H., 404
Kandampully, J., xxviii, 232, 483
Kane, Y. I., 366
Kaplan, A., 404
Kaplan, R. S., 189
Kasper, H., 366
Kasturi, A., 365
Katona, Z., 231
Katzenbach, J. R., 366
Kaufman, R., xxviii, 216, 231, 319,
 321, 327, 366, 433, 450, 617
Keating, B. W., 320, 327
Keaveney, S. M., 403
Keeley, C., 173
Keeling, K. A., 365
Keh, H. T., xxix
Keiningham, T. L., xxviii, 403, 477, 481,
 482, 483, 606
Kelleher, H., 358
Keller, K. L., 231
Kelly, G., 344
Kelly, S. J., 121
Keyser, A. D., 433, 483
KFC, 107, 108
Kilronan Castle Hotel, 191
Kim, J., 183
Kim, K., 175
Kimes, S. E., xxviii, 189, 299, 459, 530,
 534, 596
Kinard, B. R., 366

King, T., 121
Kirkland, R., 366
Kirkpatrick, T., 347
Kitshoff, J., 366
Kiwi Experience, 522–529
Klassen, K. J., 299, 477
Klein, S. S., 271
Klose, S., 153
Klundert, J. V., 232
Knisely, G., 33
Koch, S., 189
Koller, D., 112
Kormusheva, K., 320, 327
Koschate, N., 403
Kotler, P., 232
Kötterheinrich, K., 404
Kovar, S. E., 231
Kowalkowski, C., 320, 327
Krishnan, M. S., 481
Kristensson, P., 121
Kroll, E. B., 404
Kroschke, M., 232
Kubowicz, C., 404
Kuehn, R., 326
Kum, D., 433
Kumar, S., 271
Kumar, V., 231, 403
Kuntze, R., 403
Kunz, W., xxviii, 33, 61, 115, 262, 271,
 477, 549
Kwortnik, R. J. Jr., 366

L

Laker, B., 503
Lakhani, K. R., 121
Lala, V., 433
Lam, S. Y., 326, 404
Lamb, C. Jr., 327
Lampo, S. K., 271
Lang, S., 286
Langeard, E., xxviii, 48, 61, 120
Lanseng, E. J., 365
Lapert, D., xxix
Larbig, C., 121
Larivière, B., xxviii, 483
Larréché, J.-C., xxviii
Lasmar, L. C. C., 366
Launier, K., 286
Laval, B., 289, 299
Lavidge, R. J., 231
Lawler, III, E. E., 366
Lay, G., 33
Ledingham, D., 404
Lee, D., 326

- Lee, J., 404
 Lee, J. C., 183
 Lee, K. S., 299
 Lee Meng Chung, 477
 Legg, D., 231
 Lehmann, D. R., 403
 Leinsle, P., 189
 Lemmink, J., xxviii
 Lemon, K. N., xxviii, 231,
 271, 381, 382, 403
 Lent, T., 602–604
 Leong, V. S., 231
 Lerner, J., 115
 Lervik-Olsen, L., 90
 Levesque, T., 433
 Levitt, T., 15, 33
 Lewis, B., xxix
 Lewis, M., 231, 403
 Lewis, M. W., 503
 Libai, B., 231, 404
 Lim, C., 320, 327
 Lin, J.-S. C., xxix, 153
 Lin, Y.-T., 232
 LinkedIn, 84, 85, 115, 158,
 180, 208, 212
 Lipkin, M., 271
 Liu, D., 231
 Liu, S., 82
 Liu, X., 477
 Liu, X.-Y., 366
 Liu, Y., 366, 403
 Live Nation Entertainment
 Inc., 155
 Lloyd, H. C., 433
 Lloyd, R. C., 299
 Lobschat, L., 232
 Logan Airport, 318
 Long, E., 426
 Loureiro, S. M. C., 327
 Lovelock, C. H., 33, 61, 120, 365,
 433, 477, 506, 511, 583, 591
 Loveman, G. W., 25, 33, 365, 371
 Lowry, J., 271
 The Loyalty Effect, 372
 Lu, V. N., 33, 61, 115, 262,
 271, 366, 477
 Lu, X., xxix
 Luddington, J. A.,
 433
 Lusch, R. F., 271
 Lusch, R. R., 33
 LUX*, 108, 109, 617–631
 Lwin, M. O., 403
 Lyft, 447
 Lynch, S., 315
 Lynn, M., 299
- M**
 MacInnis, D. J., 231
 Mack, R., 433
 Madanoglu, M., 153
 Maglio, P., xxviii, 320, 327
 Magnusson, P. R., 121
 Mahesh, V. S., 365
 Mahr, D., 61, 271
 Maister, D. H., xxviii, 271, 299
 Malhotra, A., 404
 Malhotra, N., 189
 Malthouse, E. C., 483
 Mandarin, 79
 Mandel, N., 365
 Manfredi, L., 344
 Manville, B., 503
 Marathe, R., 477
 Marberry, S. O., 315
 Mariadoss, B. J., 33
 Marionova, D., 366
 Marriott, 79, 130, 147, 349, 593–595
 Marshall, R., 433
 Martins, A., 33, 61, 115, 262, 271, 477
 Más Ruiz, F. J., 299
 Mason, L., 63, 75
 Mathews, B. P., 61
 Matthing, J., 121
 Mattila, A. S., xxviii, 189, 327,
 403, 433
 Maull, R., 189
 Mavrck, 219
 Maxham III, J. G., 433
 McCarthy, P. D., 366
 McColl-Kennedy, J., xxviii, 433
 McDonald's, 106, 223, 224, 351
 McDougall, H. G., 433
 McGinnis, L. P., 90
 McGoldrick, P. J., 365
 McGuire, K. A., 299
 McKechnie, S., 120
 McKinsey & Company, 142, 339, 487
 McNiff, E., 286
 Meer, D., 90
 Mele, C., 477
 Mende, M., xxviii, 189
 Menkhoff, T., 556
 Menton Bank, 583–590
 Meuter, M. L., 153, 271, 433
 Meyer, P., 365
 Michel, S., 433
 Michelli, J. A., 120
 Milliman, R. E., 327
 Mirchandani, R., 231
 Mitchell, J. A., 366
- Mithas, S., 481
 Mittal, B., 231
 Mittal, V., 403, 503
 Moch, N., 90
 Mody, M., 82
 Mohammed, R., 189
 Monroe, K. B., 189
 Montreal Convention Center, 79
 Moorman, C., 477, 503
 Moreno, V., 366
 Morgan, N. A., 403
 Morgeson III, F. V., 481, 503
 Morin, S., 327
 Morrison, S., 121
 Morriss, A., 90
 Moshavi, D., 365
 Mothersbaugh, D. L., 153, 404
 Motorola, 471
 Mowen, J. C., 365
 Mueller, R., 433
 Muenkhoff, E., 33
 Müller, B., 232
 Munos, A., xxix
 Munro, S., 34, 35, 37
 Munsell, A. H., 327
 Murshed, F., 403
 Mussry, J., xxix
 Mustak, M., 271
- N**
 Nakata, C., 271
 Nalebuff, B., 189
 Narayana Health, 492, 493,
 494, 496, 498
 Nasr, L., 366
 Nastasoiu, A., 403
 National Association for the Education
 of Young Children, 63
 National Library Board,
 Singapore, 556–564
 Nazifi, A., 189
 Nejad, M. G., 90
 Netemeyer, R. G., 433
 Netessine, S., 366
 Netflix, 123, 602, 606–610,
 612, 613, 615, 616
 New Grand, 79
 New York University, 34, 173
 Ng, I. C. L., xxviii, 189, 299
 Nguyen, D. T., 433
 Nickson, D., 327
 Nieman-Gonder, J., 433
 Nike, 313
 Njite, D., 121

Noble, S. M., 327
Nordfalt, J., 327
Nordstrom, 349
Normann, R., 61
North, A. C., 327
Norwegian, 212
Nunes, P. F., 153

O

Oakes, S., 327
Odekerken-Schröder, G., xxviii, 61, 271
Ojasalo, J., 121
Ojasalo, K., 121
Oldani, D., 493
Oliver, R. L., 51, 61
Oliver, T. R., 477
Onefinestay, 65
Oneworld, 387
Oracle, 218
Ordenes, F. V., 477
O'Reilly III, C. A., 365, 366
Orsingher, C., xxviii, 433
Orth, U., xxviii
Ostrom, A. L., 121, 153, 271, 403, 433
Ottenbacher, M., 121
Ouschan, R., 403

P

Page, L., 209
Palace Hotel, 81
Palmer, A., 61
Paluch, S., 33, 61, 115, 262, 271, 477, 549
Panama Canal, 7, 8
Parasuraman, A., xxviii, 33, 44, 53, 54, 61, 326, 403, 441, 444, 445, 477
Parish, J. T., 326
Park, Jongwon, 183
Park, Jooyoung, 183
Parkinson, S., 121
Parsa, H. G., 121
Patrício, L., xxviii, 271
Patterson, P., xxix, 33, 61, 115, 189, 262, 271, 477
Payne, A., 231, 404
PayPal, 102, 115
Peppiat, E., 299
Pervan, S. J., 121
Peters, T. J., 366
Pfeffer, J., 352, 356, 365, 366

Phillips, P. A., 90
Pieters, R., 432
Pieterse, M., 326
Pinterest, 212
Pizza Hut, 106, 108
Plaza, B., 326
Polo, Y., 153
Porras, J. I., 503
Prenshaw, P. J., 231
Price, L., 314
Price, S., 314
Priluck, R., 433
Procter & Gamble, 22
Proserpio, D., 189
Pruyn, A., 326
Pullman, M. E., 299, 326, 327
Puntoni, S., 366

Q

Qantas Airlines, 387
Quan, X., 306

R

Rabinovich, E., 121
RADAR, 73
Rafaeli, A., xxviii, 299, 365
Ramaseshan, B., 232, 403
Ramaseshan, R., xxviii
Ranaweera, C., xxviii
Rangaswamy, A., 90
Rao, R. C., 189
Rathmell, J. M., 33
Ravald, A., 477
Rawson, A., 271
Ray, K. R., 271
Red Lobster, 565–566
Regency, 78, 79
Rego, L. L., 403
Reichheld, F. F., 372, 374–375, 380, 403, 404
Reimann, M., 404
Reimer, A., 326
Reinartz, W. J., 33, 404
Reinders, M. J., 271
Remes, J., 477
Rentokil Initial, 71, 73, 314
Reuters, 142
Reynolds, K. E., 404
Reynolds, K. L., 433
Reynoso, J., xxix
Ribeiro, D., 153
Rigby, D. K., 404

Rinaldo, S. B., 365
Ristorante D'O, 490, 493, 494
Ritz-Carlton Hotels Group, 342, 487
Robins, T., 498
Robson, S. K. A., 327
Rod, M., 365
Rodie, A. R., 271
Roggeveen, A. L., 327
Rohleder, T. R., 299
Rolls-Royce, 14, 180
Roos, I., 404
Roschk, H., 327, 433
Rosenbaum, M. S., xxviii, 403
Rosenbloom, S., 231
Rosenblum, D., 403
Rosengren, S., 365
Rossi, C. A. V., 433
Rossiter, J. R., 326
Roth, A., 365
Rothman, S., 90
Rowan, L., 189
Royal Caribbean, 212
Royal Dining (membership program), 596–601
Royal Flying Doctor Service, 127
Ruby, 115
Ruiz, D. M., 365
Russell, J. A., 327
Russell, R. M., 477
Russell-Bennett, R., xxviii, 33
Russian Soyuz, 113
Rust, R. T., xxviii, 33, 90, 231, 263, 271, 381, 382, 403, 477, 503
Ryanair, 211

S

Saint Laurent, 554, 555
Sallaku, R., 327
Samsung, 14, 15, 115
Sands, S., 477
Sangiorgi, D., 121
Sarantopoulos, P., 477
Sarkees, M., 403
Sarvary, M., 231
Sasser, W. E. Jr., xxviii, 25, 33, 299, 365, 372, 374, 375, 403, 503
Sayedi, A., 231
Sayrak, A., 503
Scandinavian Airlines System (SAS), 46
Schaarschmidt, M., 365
Schadler, T., 433
Schartinger, D., 33
Schefter, P., 404

Schilke, O., 404
 Schlesinger, L. A., 25, 33, 365, 503
 Schlesinger, L. H., 403
 Schlesinger, L. L., 365
 Schmalensee, R., 90
 Schmidt, M., 403
 Schmitt, P., 232
 Schneider, B., xxviii, 343, 365, 366
 Schneider, J., 121
 Schoeler, A., 403
 Scholarios, D., 365
 Schreier, M., 366
 Schultz, H., 95
 Schumann, J. H., 189
 Schwab, C., 219, 379, 467
 Schwartz, T. A., 61, 271
 Scott, D., 121
 Scott, L., 403
 Scott, M. L., 189
 Segmentation, Targeting, and
 Positioning (STP), 65–67
 Seidel, W., 433
 Seiders, K., 153, 189, 231
 Self, J. T., 121
 Seltman, K. D., 326, 366
 The Service Industries Journal, 70
 SERVQUAL, 54
 Sese, F. J., 153
 Shane, S., 153
 Shangri-La, 78, 79
 Shankar, V., 404
 Shapiro, T., 433
 Sharpe, M. E., 51
 Sheraton, 78, 79
 Sherr, I., 366
 Shetty, D., 493
 Shi, Z. (June), 189
 Shirai, Y., xxix
 Shirks, A., 477
 Shostack, G. L., 20, 33, 61, 271
 Shouldice Hospital, 70
 Shulver, M., 271
 Siemens, 14
 Siguaw, J. A., 477
 Sim Kay Wee, 579
 Simester, D., 477
 Simon, H., 170, 189
 Simons, R., 90
 SimpliFlying, 208
 Singapore Airlines (SIA), 45,
 493, 575–582
 Singh, J., 366
 Sinkula, J. M., 477

Sirianni, N. J., 365
 Sivakumar, K., 271
 Skiera, B., 232
 Skinner, W., 503
 Smalley, K., 404
 Smith, A. K., 175
 Smith, D. K., 366
 Smith, E., 189
 Smith, F. W., 453
 Smith, P., 231
 Smith, W. K., 503
 Smith-Daniels, V., 121
 Snapchat, 212
 Snellman, K., 433
 Snyder, H., 90
 So, K. K. F., 82
 Söderlund, M., 365
 Sofitel Hotels & Resorts, 130
 Solomon, M. R., 61
 Soman, D., 189
 Southwest Airlines, 114, 138,
 211, 343–344, 351, 487
 Space Adventures, 113
 Sparks, B. A., 366
 Spector, R., 366
 Spell, C., 153
 Spohrer, J., xxviii
 Spotify, 95
 Sprott, D. E., 61
 Srinivasan, K., 189, 231
 Staelin, R., 404
 Stakhovych, S., 404
 Starbucks, 71, 95, 98, 127, 133,
 142, 147, 182, 198, 349,
 388, 487
 Stauss, B., xxviii, 403, 433
 Staybridge Suites, 107
 Stein, A., 477
 Steiner, G. A., 231
 Stena Line, 437
 Stephen, A. T., 231
 Stephens, N., 433
 Stevenson, T. H., 189
 Stewart, D. M., 271
 Stickdorn, M., 121
 Stone, B., 271, 271
 Storey, C., 121
 Strong, E. K., 231
 Stuart, J. A., 403
 Student Union, 35
 Subramony, M., 365
 Sullivan, M. W., 61
 Sunder, S., 404

Sunnybrooke Holland
 Centre, 498
 Suprenant, C., 61
 Susan Munro, 511–512
 Sveum, M., 153
 Swank, C. K., 477
 Sweeney, J., 90, 231
 Sykuta, M., 153

T

Taco Bell, 107
 Tadikamalla, P., 503
 Talaga, J., 433
 Tamaddoni, A., 404
 Tan, R. L. P., 327
 Tan Pee Teck, 576
 Tang, C. S., xxviii, 517
 Tansik, D. A., 366
 Tax, S. S., 271, 432
 Teal, T., 403
 Teas, R. K., 61
 Technical Assistance Research Programs
 Institute (TARP), 433
 Tellis, G. J., 231
 Terbord, J. R., 365
 Thomas, J. S., 404
 Thomas, L., 326
 Thomas, P., 553
 Thompson, G. M., 366
 Thompson, Sir Clive, 73
 Thrun, S., 112
 Tide, 22
 TikTok, 82, 123, 212
 Tirunillai, S., 231
 TiVo, 205
 Toman, N., 403, 433
 Tomczak, T., 231
 Tomlin, M., 271, 446, 477
 Tomlinson, D., 403
 Totzek, D., 189, 403
 Toussaint, J. S., 464
 Toyota, 14
 Tripp, T. M., 433
 Trischler, J., 121
 Trout, J., 74, 90
 Tsao, H.-Y., 477
 Tsiotsou, R., xxviii
 Tucci, L. A., 433
 Tucker, C., 90
 Turley, L. W., 327
 Tushman, M. L., 503

Tuzovic, S., 271, 433, 602
Twilio, 115
Twitter, 100, 115, 193, 208,
212, 213, 215

U

Uber, 81, 82, 114, 145, 155,
167, 217, 447, 517–521
Uber Eats, 138
Ulaga, W., 33
Ulrich, R., 306
Ulwick, T., 90
Uncles, M., 403
Upah, G. D., 61
Upfluence, 219
UPS, 127, 223
Upwork, 115
Urovi, V., 365
U.S. Department of Commerce, 9
USAA, 263
UserTesting.com, 115

V

Vaerenbergh, Y. V., 90, 433, 477
Valentini, S., 433
van Beuningen, J., 503
van Bruggen, G., 90
van Jaarsveld, D. D., 365
van Osselaer, S. M. J., 366
Van Riel, A. C. R., 90
Vandenbosch, M., 403
Vandermerwe, S., xxix
VanderPlaat, P., 433
Vanguard Group, 379, 380,
491–492, 493, 494, 495
Varga, D., 433
Vargo, S. L., xxviii, 33, 271
Vaughan, C. J., 365
Verhoef, P. C., 403
Verma, R., xxviii, 596
The View, 534–538
Vigolo, V., 327
Vihtkari, T., 433
Vijaya Sunder M., 477

Vilares, M. J., 403
Vine, 212
Virgin Atlantic, 78, 216, 315
Virgin Galactic, 113
Virgin Group, 106
Visa, 74
Volkers, M., 61
Vondrasek, M. R., 403
Voorhees, C. M., 299, 366

W

Wagner, C. J., 189
Wakefield, K., 231
Walker, D., 365
Walsh, G., 404
Walt Disney World Resort, 453
Walton, S., 357
Wang, J., 299
Wangenheim, F. V., 189, 403, 432, 503
Warhurst, C., 327
Warlop, L., 189
WarnerMedia, 606, 615, 616
Waterman, R. H., 366
Weeks, W. B., 477
Wei, F., xxix
Wells Fargo Bank, 104
Wentzel, D., 231
Westin, 177, 314
Wheeler, J., 403
White, L., 404
Wiedmann, K. P., 404
Wieringa, J. E., 90
Williams, L., 483, 606
Wirtz, J., xxix, 33, 61, 82, 83, 90, 115,
120, 153, 189, 210, 231, 232, 262,
265, 271, 299, 327, 365–366, 380,
403, 404, 433, 446, 467, 477, 489,
490, 494, 496, 498, 503, 511, 517,
530, 549, 551, 552, 556, 567,
575, 583, 593, 596, 602, 617
Woisetschlager, D. M., 403
Wooden, J., 341, 365
The World Factbook 2020, 7, 8
Wright, L. K., xxviii, 61, 513
Wünderlich, N. V., 503
Wyckoff, D. D., xxviii, 477

X

Xia, L., 189
Xiao, P., xxviii, 189, 404

Y

Yadav, M. S., 189
Yagil, D., 365
Yahoo, 208, 213
Yakubovich, V., 366
Yanamandram, V., 404
Yankelovich, D., 90
Yip, G., xxviii
Young, R. F., 61
Young, S., 366
YouTube, 208, 212, 606–610,
612, 614, 615
Yu, E., 121
Yu, M., 491

Z

Zagon, L., 315
Zahonik, A. J., 477
Zaki, M., 477
Zappos, 208, 215, 359, 487
Zeelenberg, M., 432
Zeithaml, V. A., xxviii, 33, 44,
53, 54, 61, 380, 381, 382,
403, 441, 444, 477, 489,
490, 503
Zemke, R., 416
Zervas, G., 189
Zhang, J., 90
Zhang, J. J., 90
Zhang, K., 189
Zhang, Y., 231
Zhang, Z. J., 231
Zhou, Y.-P., 299
Zhu, Y., 433
Zhu, Z., 271
Ziklik, L., 365
Zimring, C., 306
Zurich, 42